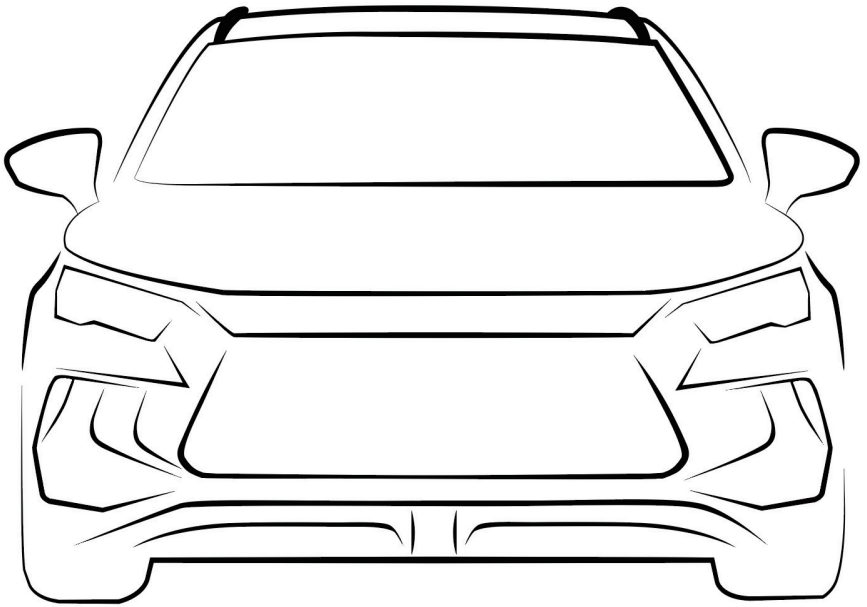
# BYD SEALION 5

OWNER'S MANUAL



# Foreword

Thank you for choosing BYD. To better use and maintain the vehicle, please read this manual carefully and keep it for future reference.

Special instructions: BYD Auto Industry Co., Ltd. recommends that you select genuine spare parts and properly use, maintain and repair the vehicle according to the requirements on this manual. Replacing any parts of the vehicle with non-genuine parts or modifying it will affect the performance of the vehicle, especially the safety and durability. All damages and performance problems of the vehicle arising from this are not covered by the warranty. Furthermore, vehicle modifications may also violate national laws, regulations and local governmental regulations.

Thank you again for choosing BYD. Your valuable comments and suggestions are welcome. For better services, please provide accurate contact information. In case of any change, please contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider as soon as possible for update. Moreover, please pay attention to laws, regulations and local policies regarding licensing in your country, and license your vehicle promptly to avoid potential licensing issues.

The descriptions marked with the asterisk (*) in this manual are specific to only some model configurations, and applicable only when the vehicle has these configurations. If there is any difference with the vehicle you purchased, the configuration of the actual vehicle shall prevail.

Pay attention to the "WARNING", "CAUTION" and "REMINDER" symbols in this manual, and follow the instructions carefully to avoid injury or damage. The hint types are defined as follows:

**WARNING**

Items that must be observed to ensure personal safety.

**CAUTION**

Items that must be observed to avoid damage to the vehicle.

**REMINDER**

Items that must be observed to facilitate maintenance.

is a safety mark to indicate an operation that should not be performed or an event that should not happen.

This manual is expected to help you use the product correctly, and does not provide any description of the configuration and software version of this product. For details about the product configuration and software version, please refer to the contract (if any) related to this product, or consult the dealer who sold the product to you.

**Sustainable Development**

BYD SEALION 5, as a hybrid passenger car, is an environmentally friendly product created by BYD. For the environmental protection information of your car, please inquire through the https://reach.bydeurope.com.

Everyone has the responsibility to protect the environment. Please use this vehicle properly and dispose of any waste and cleaning materials according to the corresponding local laws and regulations.

**Contact us**

If you have any questions about policies or procedures or need additional assist, please contact our Customer Service Center.

Email: Autoservice.contact@byd.com

If you need 24/7 road assistance or contact the customer service center (9: 00-18: 00, Monday to Saturday), please call: 00800-10203000

**Copyright © BYD Auto Industry Co., Ltd. All rights reserved.**

**No part of this document may be reproduced, copied, stored, translated, or transmitted electronically or in any other form without prior written consent and authorization of BYD Auto Industry Co., Ltd.**

**All rights reserved**

## Illustration Index

**Exterior.....7**
**Dashboard..... 8**
**Interior..... 9**
**Doors..... 10**

## Safety

**Seat Belts.....12**
Seat Belt Overview..... 12
Using Seat Belts.....12
**Airbags..... 15**
Airbag Overview..... 15
Airbag Types..... 17
Airbag Triggering Conditions and Precautions.....19
**Child Restraint Systems..... 23**
Child Restraint Systems..... 23
Installing Child Restraint Systems..... 23
**Working Modes of Dual-Mode (DM) System.....29**
Working Modes of Dual-Mode (DM) System..... 29
Working Mode Selection of Dual-Mode (DM) System.....30
Precautions for Working Modes of Dual-Mode (DM) System.....31
**Anti-theft System..... 33**
Anti-theft System.....33
**Data Collection and Processing..... 34**
Data Collection and Processing.....34

## Instrument Cluster

**Instrument Cluster..... 40**
Instrument Cluster View.....40
Instrument Cluster Indicators.....41

## Controller Operation

**Doors and Keys.....54**
Keys.....54
Locking/Unlocking Doors..... 58
Smart Access and Start System..... 65
Child Protection Lock.....66
**Seat..... 67**
Seat Precautions..... 67
Adjusting Front Seats..... 68
Folding Rear Seats.....69
Adjusting Rear-Seat Head Supports..... 69
**Steering Wheel..... 70**
Steering Wheel Switches.....70
Adjusting the Steering Wheel.....73
**Wipers..... 73**
Wiper Switch.....73
Replacing Wiper Blades..... 75
**Rearview Mirror.....76**
Interior Rearview Mirror.....76
Side Mirrors.....77
**Switches..... 78**
Light Switches..... 78
Driver's Side Door Switch Assembly.....80
Window Control Switch on Passenger Side..... 82
Odometer Switch..... 82
Passenger Airbag Switch.....83
Hazard Warning Light Switch.....84
Interior Light Switch.....84
E-Call Switch.....84

## Using and Driving


**Charging/Discharging Instructions.... 88**

Charging Instructions.....88

Charging Method.....92

Discharging Instructions.....98

Charging Port Immobilizer System.....101

SOC Balance Function.....102

**Battery.....104**

High-Voltage Battery.....104

Low-Voltage Battery.....105

**Usage Precautions.....107**

Break-in Period.....107

Trailer Towing*.....107

Safety Driving Guidelines.....115

Suggestions for Vehicle Use.....116

Fuel.....116

Saving Fuel and Extending Vehicle Service Life.....118

Carrying Luggage.....119

Risk of Carbon Monoxide (CO) Poisoning.....120

Wading into Water.....121

Fire Prevention.....122

**Starting and Driving.....123**

Starting the Vehicle.....123

Remote Start.....124

Driving the Vehicle.....125

Gearshift Lever.....127

Electric Parking Brake (EPB).....128

Automatic Vehicle Hold (AVH).....131

Driving Precautions.....132

**Driver Assistance.....134**

Driver Assistance systems Instruction..134

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC).....141

Intelligent Cruise Control (ICC).....150

Intelligent Speed Limit Control (ISLC)..153

Forward Collision Warning (FCW).....153

Automatic Emergency Braking (AEB)...157

Traffic Sign Recognition (TSR).....160

Lane Departure Assist (LDA).....163

Emergency Lane Keeping Assist (ELKA).....166

Blind Spot Detection (BSD).....169

Door Opening Warning (DOW).....171

Rear Collision Warning (RCW).....172

Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA).....175

Rear Cross Traffic Brake (RCTB).....176

Intelligent High Beam Control (IHBC)..178

Acoustic Vehicle Alert System.....180

Around View Monitor (AVM)*.....180

Reversing Image System*.....182

Parking Assist System (PAS).....183

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS).....187

Driver Monitoring System (DMS)*.....188

Child Presence Detection (CPD).....190

Driving Safety Systems.....191

**Other Main Functions.....196**

Vehicle Travelling Data Recorder*.....196


## In-Vehicle Devices


**Multimedia System.....200**

Multimedia Touchscreen.....200

Navigation Bar.....201

Gestures and Responses.....201

OTA Upgrade.....201

BYD Assistant.....202

Bluetooth Call.....202

File Management.....203

**A/C System.....203**

A/C Control Panel..... 203
A/C Settings Interface.....204
Function Definition..... 205
A/C Vents.....208
**BYD App..... 208**
About BYD App.....208
Account Registration..... 209
Vehicle Condition and Control.....209
Individual Center and Vehicle Management.....209
**Storage Device.....210**
Door Bins..... 210
Glove Box..... 210
Bill Box..... 210
Center Console Cubby.....210
Glasses Case..... 211
Seatback Pockets..... 211
Cup Holder.....211
**Other Devices..... 212**
Sun Visor.....212
Grab Handles.....212
USB Ports.....212
12V Standby Power..... 213
Rack..... 213
Wireless Phone Charger*..... 214

## Maintenance

**Maintenance Information.....218**
Maintenance Cycle and Items.....218
**Regular Maintenance..... 221**
Regular Maintenance..... 221
Vehicle Corrosion Prevention..... 222
Paint Maintenance Tips.....223
Exterior Cleaning..... 223
Interior Cleaning.....225
**Self-Maintenance.....227**
Self-Maintenance..... 227
Vehicle Storage.....229
Hood..... 230
Engine Maintenance.....231
Cooling System.....232
Braking System.....233
Washer..... 233
A/C System.....234
Wiper Maintenance..... 234
Tire.....235
Fuses..... 238

## When Faults Occur

**When Faults Occur..... 246**
Reflective Vest..... 246
If Smart Key Battery Is Exhausted.....246
If there is a High-Voltage Fault.....246
If the Vehicle Cannot Power on.....246
If the engine fails to start while driving.....247
If the Engine is Overheated.....247
If the Vehicle Needs Towing.....248
If a Tire Goes Flat.....250

## Vehicle Specifications

**Data Information..... 256**
Vehicle Data.....256
**Prompt Information.....259**
Vehicle Identification..... 259
Warning Labels.....261
Transponder Mounting Position.....262
**Declarations of Conformity..... 263**

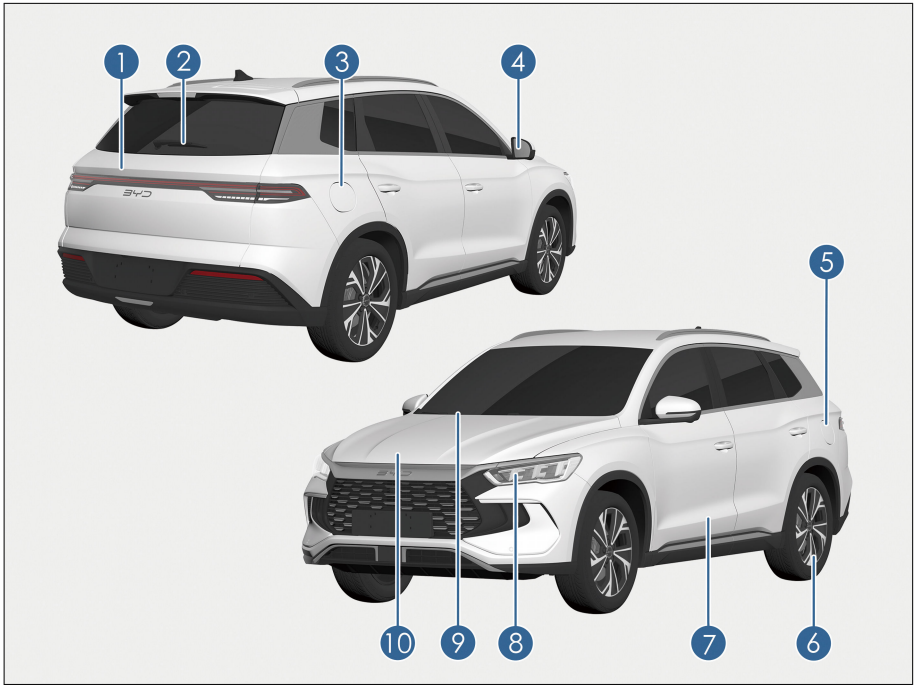
Declarations of Conformity.....263

## Abbreviation List

**Abbreviations.....271**

# Illustration Index

## Exterior





1 Tailgate ***P61***

2 Rear Wiper ***P75***

3 Charge port door ***P93***

4 Side Mirrors ***P77***

5 Refueling Port Cover***P117***

Refueling***P117***

6 Tires ***P235***

In Case of a Flat Tire ***P250***

7 Doors ***P58***

Locking/Unlocking Doors ***P58***

8 Lights ***P229***

9 Front Wiper ***P75***

10 Hood ***P230***

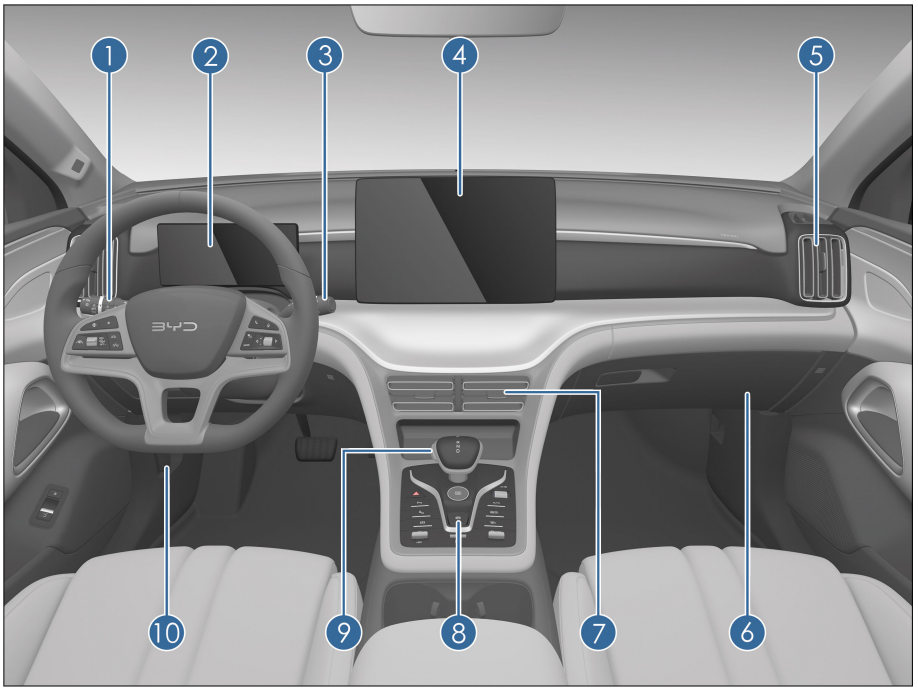
Cooling System ***P232***

Braking System ***P233***

Washer ***P233***

Under-Hood Fuse Box Nameplate ***P238***

# Dashboard




1 Light Switches ***P78***
Odometer Switch ***P82***

2 Instrument Cluster ***P40***

3 Wiper Switch ***P73***

4 Multimedia Touchscreen ***P200***

5 Front Side Vent ***P208***

6 Glove Box ***P210***

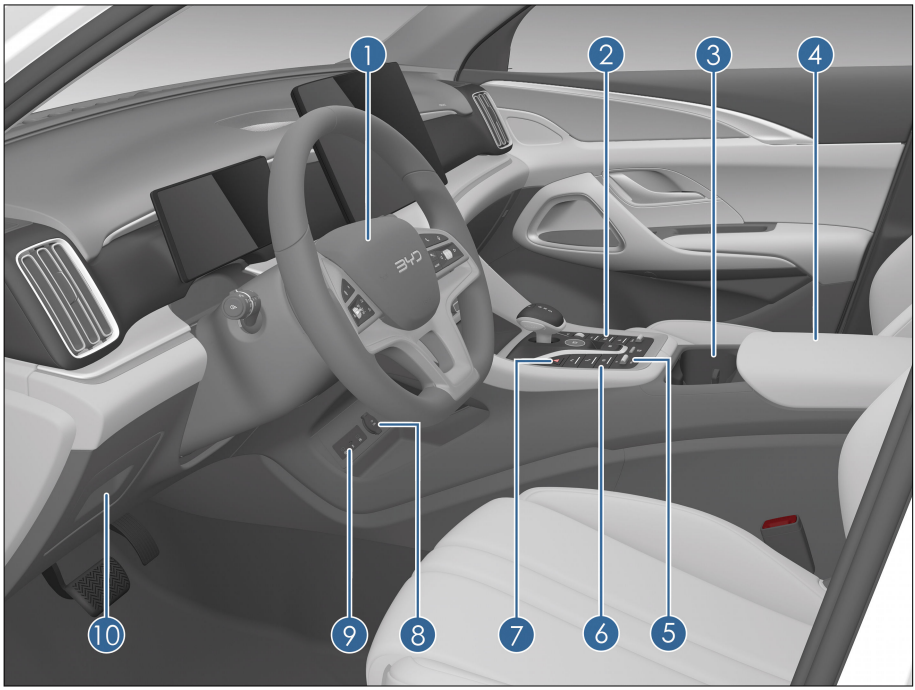
7 Front Center Vent ***P208***

8 Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) ***P128***

9 Gearshift Lever ***P127***

10 Hood Opening Handle ***P230***

# Interior




1 Steering Wheel
Steering Wheel Switch Group ***P70***
Adjusting Steering Wheel ***P73***

2 A/C Panel ***P203***

3 Front Seat Cup Holder ***P211***

4 Center Console Cubby ***P210***

5 Mode Switch Group ***P30***

6 Reversing Radar Power Switch (RRPS) ***P184***
BSD Switch ***P169***
AVH Switch ***P131***

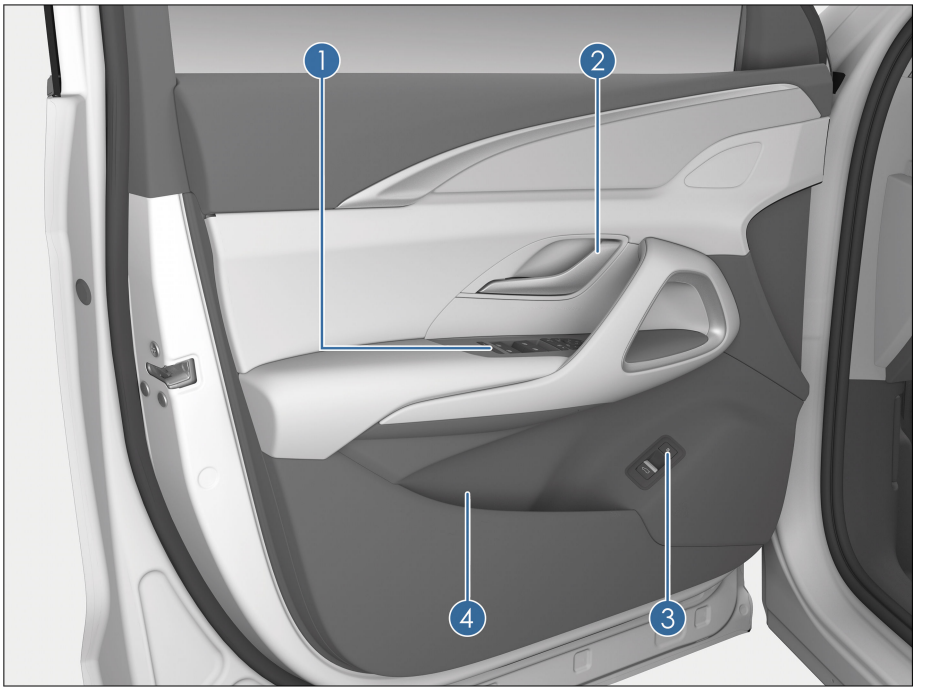
7 Hazard Warning Light Switch ***P84***

8 12V Standby Power ***P213***

9 USB Ports ***P212***

10 Bill Box ***P210***

# Doors




1 Power Window Switches ***P80***

Central Control Door Lock Switch ***P82***

Window Lock Button ***P82***

2 Interior Door Handle ***P58***

3 Interior Tailgate Button* ***P61***

Refueling Port Cover Switch ***P117***

4 Door Bins ***P210***

# 01 SAFETY

Seat Belts..... 12
Airbags..... 15
Child Restraint Systems..... 23
Working Modes of Dual-Mode (DM) System.....29
Anti-theft System.....33
Data Collection and Processing..... 34

# Seat Belts

## Seat Belt Overview

Studies have shown that proper use of seat belts can significantly reduce casualties in emergency braking, sudden steering, or collisions. Please read the following information carefully and observe it strictly.

**WARNING**

- The driver should ensure that all occupants are wearing seat belts before driving the vehicle to prevent serious injury or death in emergency braking or in a collision.
- The seat belts are designed primarily for adults and are not intended for children. Make sure to choose an appropriate child restraint system according to your child's age and size (see ***P23*** in this chapter).
- If the seat belt is damaged or dysfunctional, immediately contact a BYD authorized service provider for confirmation and handling. Do not use the corresponding seat before such confirmation and handling.

- BYD has highly emphasized that driver and occupants should always fasten their seat belts while in the vehicle. Failure to do so increases the risk of injury in case of an accident.
- It is recommended that children be seated in rear seats and always use seat belts and a suitable CRS. In emergency braking or collision, unprotected children may be seriously injured and their lives may be endangered. Similarly, do not allow children to sit on the lap, so that children can not be fully protected in case of emergency braking or collision.

**Emergency Locking Retractor (ELR)**

- During the sharp turn, emergency braking and collision process, or when the occupant leans forward too quickly, the seat belt automatically locks to effectively restrain and protect the occupant.
- Occupants can move freely when the vehicle is running smoothly and the seat belts are pulled out or retracted slowly.
- If the safety belt is locked due to too fast rewinding, it is necessary to pull the webbing, so that the webbing has a certain amount of relaxation and can be recovered, so that the safety belt can be pulled out smoothly.

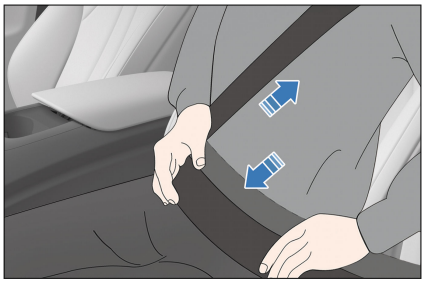
**Pretensioner and Force Limiter Function***

When the vehicle suffers a severe frontal collision and the activating conditions of the pretensioner are met, the pretensioner quickly retracts some of the seat belt and locks it to further protect the driver and passengers. The pretensioner limits the seat-belt restraint force to the occupant's body to a certain extent so as to avoid injury to the occupant due to an excessive restraint force.

## Using Seat Belts

1. Adjust the seat to the proper position and adjust the backrest to the proper angle. (See ***P68***)
2. Adjust the position of the three-point seat belt.

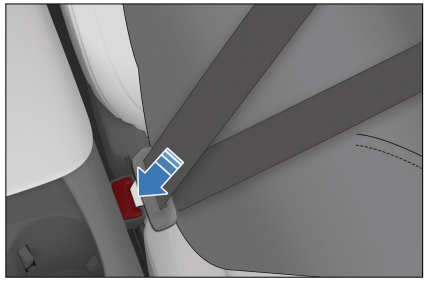
- Keep a proper sitting posture and pull the seat belt out to wear it diagonally from the shoulder to the chest. The belt should not go under the arm or across the back of the neck. Keep the belt lap part as close as possible to the hip bone.



**WARNING**

- The shoulder belt should cross the center of the shoulder. The seat belt should be far from the neck and not liable to slip from the shoulder; otherwise, it cannot function well in the event of emergency braking or accident and may even cause severe injury.
- The lap belt should be positioned as low as possible across the hip to prevent any injury caused by pressing against the abdomen in case of an accident.
- The seat belt should be fitted tight to the body for better protection.

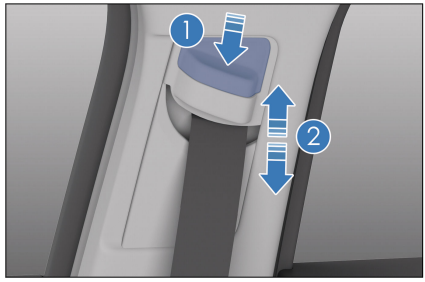
3. Insert the latch into the buckle until it clicks and then pull it back to make sure it is firmly locked. Do not fasten the belt if it twisted.



4. Adjust the height of the (front) seat belts for optimum comfort and protection.

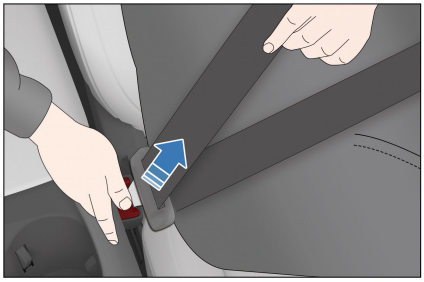
① Press the seat belt height adjuster release button.

② Move it up or down to the desired height and then release it.




5. Pull the belt firmly to verify whether it is locked.
6. Unbuckling Seat Belts

- Press the red unlock button on the buckle. The latch plate pops out, and the seat belt automatically retracts. If the seat belt cannot retract smoothly and automatically, pull it out to check whether it is twisted.



**WARNING**

- One seat belt is for one occupant only. Do not allow two or more people (including children) to use the same seat belt at the same time.
- Avoid traveling with the seatback leaning too far back. The seat belt protection performs best when the seatback is upright.
- Make sure that no seat belt or itsspring bolt/buckle becomes pressed by the door; otherwise, the seat belt may be damaged.
- Check the seat belts regularly for cuts, wear, looseness, and other abnormalities. If any problem is found, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for confirmation and handling. Until then, do not use the corresponding seat.
- Do not remove, disassemble or modify the seat belts.
- After an accident, have the seat belts checked at a BYD authorized dealer or service provider. If the preloading function is activated, the seat belt must be replaced.
- In the event of a serious accident, even if there is no apparent damage, the seat belt should be replaced along with the seat assembly. The airbag

**WARNING**

system should also be thoroughly inspected.

- Every time you have to replace a seat belt, be sure to replace it with a qualified seat belt.
- Pregnant women should also fasten their seat belt properly. Particularly, be sure to position the lap belt as low across the hip as possible to prevent serious injury.
- The method of wearing a rear seat belt is the same as that for a front seat belt. For normal functioning of the rear seat belt, please ensure that its latch is inserted into the corresponding buckle during use. The driver should ensure that all occupants are wearing seat belts before driving the vehicle.
- Do not insert foreign objects such as coins and clips into the buckle as they prevent proper connection between the latch and buckle.

**Seat Belt Reminders**

If the driver or the front passenger has not buckled up after the vehicle is started, visual and audible alarm will start working until the corresponding seat belt is properly fastened.

- Main Seat Belt Reminder
  - When any seat's belt is not fastened, the unfastened seat belt indicator flashes.
- Display of unfastened belt's seat
  - When a seat belt is not fastened, the indicator for the corresponding seat will light up and remain on in case of abnormal conditions in the vehicle.

- Unfastened seat belt reminder for front passenger
  - When the vehicle is powered on, if the driver or the front passenger does not fasten the seat belt, the main seat belt reminder indicator and the reminder indicator for the corresponding seat lights up; if the seat belt is still not fastened when the vehicle is running, the seat belt reminder indicator stays on and there is a warning sound.
- Seat belt reminder for rear passengers
  - When the vehicle is powered on, if any rear passenger does not fasten the seat belt, the main seat belt reminder indicator and the reminder indicator for the corresponding seat light up. While the vehicle is in motion, when only rear seats are loaded with occupant(s), who have not buckled up, the seat belt reminder indicator is on and audible alarm is given.
- When all the occupants have buckled up, the seat belt reminder indicator and all indicators displayed for the corresponding seats turn off.

**WARNING**

- If the above functions are abnormal or fail, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- When driving, make sure all occupants have their seat belts properly fastened Otherwise, in the event of emergency braking or collision, the people in the car are more vulnerable to serious physical injury or even life-threatening.

# Airbags

## Airbag Overview

- The airbag system is a part of auxiliary restraint system and also a supplement to seats and seat belts. When the vehicle is involved in a serious collision and the airbag system meets its deployment conditions, relevant airbags will rapidly deploy and, along with seat belts, provide additional protection for heads and chests of the driver and occupants, to reduce likelihood of personal injury or even death.
- According to the collision type, the airbag is generally divided into frontal airbag and side airbag. The frontal airbag includes the driver airbag and front passenger airbag, and the side airbag includes the front side airbag and curtain airbag.
- The airbag system cannot replace the seat belt. It is an integral part of the whole passive safety protection system of the vehicle. Only when the airbag works together with the fastened seat belt can the airbag system provide maximum protection.

**WARNING**

- Occupants must sit in a proper position to maximize the protection provided by seat belts and the airbag system.
- Do not disassemble or assemble the airbag components.
- It is recommended to use genuine seat covers of BYD. Other seat covers may lead to degradation of airbag performance or passenger injuries.

**WARNING**

- Do not place anything between the side airbag and the passenger.
- Do not apply excessive force to the side of the seat equipped with side airbag.
- After some collision accidents, even if the airbag is not exploded and the pre-tightening seat belt is not locked, in order to ensure that the airbag system can work properly. it is recommended that you contact the BYD authorized dealer or service provider as soon as possible for testing.

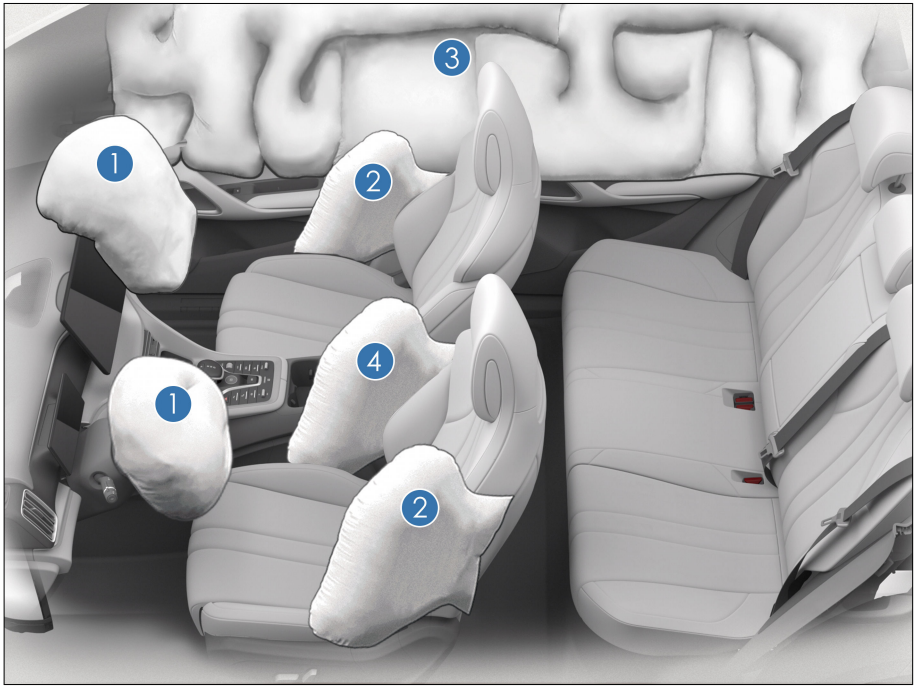
Airbag warning light

- The airbag system is monitored by the electronic control unit and has a self-diagnostic function that displays the system status via warning light on the instrument cluster.
- When the power supply of the whole vehicle is in the "ON" or "OK" gear, the airbag warning lamp lights up for about 5S and then goes out, indicating that the system is normal.

**WARNING**

- If the airbag warning light is always on, it indicates that the system is out of order. It is recommended to check the airbag system at the authorized service shop of BYD Automobile as soon as possible, otherwise the function of the airbag will be affected.
- If your vehicle is flooded (for example, the carpet is wet/the vehicle is immersed in water, etc.) or the vehicle is damaged by water to varying degrees, do not start the vehicle before cutting off the low-voltage battery, otherwise the airbag may deploy, causing serious injury or even life-threatening.

# Airbag Types




① Driver and Front Passenger Airbags

② Front Seat Side Airbags

③ Side Curtain Airbags

④ Front Far Side Airbag

**Driver and Front Passenger Airbags**

The driver's airbag is installed inside the steering wheel, and the front passenger's airbag is installed inside the dashboard and marked with "AIRBAG". When the vehicle is subjected to a moderate to severe impact after being powered on, the airbag will be deployed to reduce the degree of injury to you when the corresponding airbag triggering conditions are reached.

**Front Airbag Deployment**

- In moderate to severe frontal crashes, a sensor detects a sharp deceleration and sends a signal to the ECU to trigger the front airbags.
- In the event of a head-on crash, the seat belt helps secure your lower body and torso, and the airbag acts as an air cushion to help stabilize and protect your head and chest.
- When the severity of the impact does not reach the airbag deployment threshold, the seat belt provides enough protection.
- The front airbag deflates immediately after inflation, without affecting the

driver's vision and ability to operate the steering wheel or other controls.

- When the airbag reaches the trigger condition, it can be quickly deployed and inflated, thus providing additional protection for drivers and passengers in accidents.
- A loud noise will be heard when the airbag deploys. It will not cause injury, but it may cause tinnitus or temporary deafness.
- Smoke and dust may be seen when the airbag is deployed after a crash. Although the smoke and dust are non-toxic, passengers with respiratory diseases may still feel some temporary discomfort. If they have serious discomfort, please seek medical treatment in time.

**WARNING**

- Accessories, such as telephone holders, cups, ashtrays, must not be installed on airbag covers or within their action range. Otherwise, airbag deployment will increase the risk of injury in an accident.

**Front Seat Side Airbags**

Seat side airbags are installed on the outboard side of the seat back and are labeled "AIRBAG." When a moderate to severe side impact is detected during vehicle travel and the triggering conditions are met, the airbag on the struck side deploys to help protect the occupant's chest.

**WARNING**

- Do not wet the seat back to prevent the normal operation of the seat side airbag.

**WARNING**

- Do not cover or replace the seat backrest cover by yourself. Inappropriate seat backrest cover replacement or covering hinders the deployment of seat side airbags in the event of a collision.
- Generally, only the airbag on the impacted side deploys in the event of a side impact.
- In order to obtain the best protection from the seat side airbag, the passenger must fasten the seat belt and sit upright against the seat back.

**Front Far Side Airbag**

The vehicle is equipped with a front far side airbag, mounted in the inner edge of the driver's seat (marked with "AIRBAG"), as shown. When a moderate to severe front or side impact and the triggering conditions are met, the far side airbag deploys to protect the heads and shoulders of the driver and the front passenger.

**WARNING**

- Do not wet the seat back to prevent the normal operation of the far-side airbag system.
- Do not cover or replace the seat backrest cover by yourself. Inappropriate seat backrest cap replacement or covering hinders the deployment of seat side airbags in the event of a collision.
- If the impact occurs on the passenger side, the farside airbag will deploy even if there is no passenger in the passenger seat.

**WARNING**

- In order to obtain the best protection from the farside airbag of driver’ s seat, the passenger must fasten the seat belt and sit upright against the seat back.

**Side Curtain Airbags**

The left-side curtain airbag and the right-side curtain airbag are installed at the junction of the body side wall and the roof, and are marked with "AIRBAG" on the B-pillar guard and the C-pillar guard. when the vehicle suffers a medium to severe lateral collision triggering conditions for side curtain air bags are met, air bags will deploy to assist in protecting the head of the driver/passenger on the side suffering the collision to reduce injury.

**WARNING**

- Generally, only the airbag on the impacted side deploys in the event of a side impact.
- In order to obtain the best protection from the side airbag, the passenger must fasten the seat belt and sit upright against the seat back.

## Airbag Triggering Conditions and Precautions

**Airbag Triggering Conditions**

- In the event of a vehicle collision, whether an airbag will be triggered is decided by factors such as the amount of collision energy, accident type, collision angle, obstacles, and vehicle speed. The airbag system may be triggered in special collisions.
- The airbag system does not always work in any accident, and generally it will not be triggered in the event of a minor frontal collision, side collision, rear collision or rollover. In this case, the driver and passengers are protected by their properly fastened seat belts.
- Determinants of airbag system triggering: Decision is made by comparing the deceleration curve, generated in the collision and obtained by the Electronic Control Unit (ECU), and the set value. If signals, such as the deceleration curve generated and measured in the collision, are lower than the respective reference values preset in the ECU, the airbag system will not be triggered even if the vehicle may have been seriously deformed in the accident.
- The ECU of the BYD airbag system has been set up with considerations of common misuse and road conditions. However, due to the increasing changes in causes and forms of vehicle collisions, for your safety, please strictly follow this user manual, use the vehicle correctly, and avoid its misuse. Otherwise, there is no guarantee that the airbags will achieve their expected effect.

**Airbag rollover sensing protection**

- If a vehicle experiences a side roll-over accident, once the conditions for activation of the roll-over protection system are met, the seat-side airbag, far-side airbag, side-curtain airbag, and seatbelt pretensioner will deploy to protect the occupants and mitigate the severity of injuries.

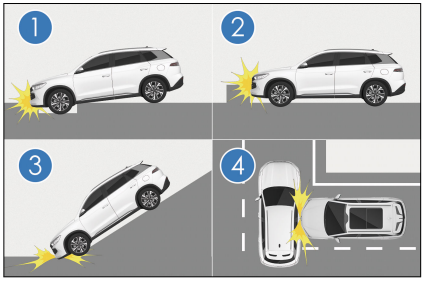
**Cases When Airbags May Be Deployed**

① The vehicle's nose hits the ground when crossing a deep groove.

② The vehicle hits a bump or curbstone.

③ The vehicle's nose hits the ground when going down a steep slope.

④ One side of the vehicle is hit by another vehicle.



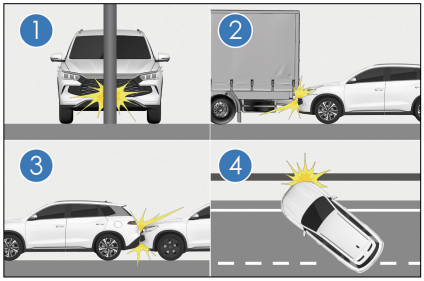

**Cases When Airbags May Not Be Deployed**

① The vehicle hits a concrete column, tree, or other slim objects.

② The vehicle goes under a truck or another large vehicle.

③ The tail of the vehicle is hit by another vehicle.

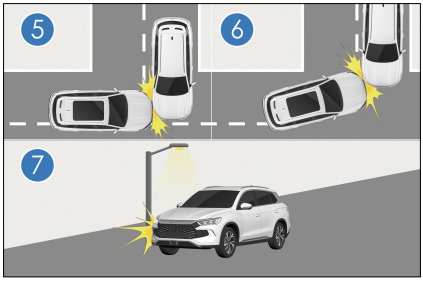
④ The vehicle hits a wall or a vehicle at a side other than the front side.




⑤ Parts other than the passenger compartment receive side impact.

⑥ The lateral side of the vehicle is hit diagonally.

⑦ The lateral side of the vehicle hits a columnar object.




**WARNING**

- Airbags are designed for specific models. Any changes to suspension, tire size, bumpers, chassis and factory-equipped devices may adversely affect the airbag system. Users must not use any parts of the airbag system on other car models; doing so may lead to failure of the airbag system.
- Drivers should maintain a distance of at least 25 cm between their chest and the steering wheel, in order for the system to provide the most effective driver protection.
- After the airbag system is deployed, the high-temperature gas of the airbag will be discharged from the airbag exhaust hole. Avoid touching its components. Please keep the correct posture of holding the steering wheel. Otherwise, there is a possibility of scalding when the airbag is deployed.
- Fasten your seat belt and sit properly while the vehicle is in motion. If the seat belt is

**WARNING**

not fastened, and the occupant is leaning forward or sitting improperly, airbag deployment can increase the risk of injury.

- Do not paste stickers, cover or decorate the hub cover of the steering wheel, the right side surface of the dashboard or the surface of A, B, and C pillar trims and seat side airbag. Clean these surfaces with a dry or damp cloth, without applying too much pressure.
- A child is not to be seated in the front passenger seat, nor are they to ride sitting on a front passenger's lap, to prevent serious injury or even casualty caused by airbag deployment.
- Side airbags and side curtain airbags deploy quickly with high impact forces. Occupants must not lean against the doors of vehicles equipped with these airbags while these vehicles are in motion. Failure to do so could result in serious injury or even death.
- Do not place other trims or articles within the action range of any side curtain airbag (e.g., windshields, side door glass, A-pillar shields, roof, B-pillar shields, C-pillar shields and auxiliary handles). Otherwise, trims or objects will be thrown out due to the strong force released when side curtain airbags deploy, or will cause failure of side curtain airbags to deploy properly, resulting in serious or even life-threatening injuries.
- When transferring vehicle ownership, make sure to pass on

**WARNING**

all of the vehicle's documents and keep the new ownership informed of airbag conditions and replacement dates.

- Do not modify or replace seats or trims of the seats with side airbags. These changes may prevent normal deployment of side airbags, and thereby cause airbag system failure or unintended deployment of side airbags, resulting in serious injury or death.
- Do not disassemble or repair the A-pillar trim, ceiling, B-pillar trim or C-pillar trim, which contain side curtain airbags. These changes can cause failure of the airbag system or accidental deployment of curtain airbags, which may cause serious injury or even death.
- Do not change any component of the airbag system, including any corresponding label. It is recommended that any operation done to the airbags be performed by a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- Airbags can only provide one-time accident protection. Once the airbag is triggered or damaged, the airbag system must be replaced.
- Follow safety regulations and procedures related to the scrapping of parts of the vehicle or its airbag system.
- The airbag system has strong anti-interference and anti-disturbance resistance to electromagnetic fields around it. However, to avoid accidents, do not use the

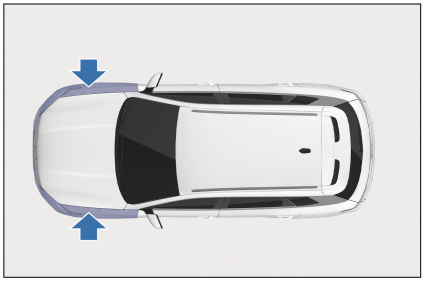
**WARNING**

vehicle in an electromagnetic environment that violates national regulations.

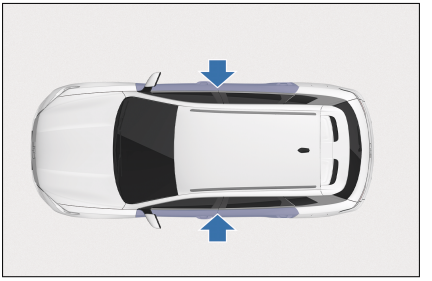
- The airbag system of this vehicle is designed with full consideration of common misuses and road conditions. However, in order to avoid accidents, do not have the bottom of the vehicle impacted or drive roughly in harsh road conditions.
- This vehicle's airbag system has been fully verified to seamlessly match the vehicle's original wiring harness system. Any wiring harness modification or alteration may cause the airbags to deploy mistakenly under normal conditions or fail to deploy in the event of a collision.

**It is recommended that you contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider immediately if any of the following situations occurs.**

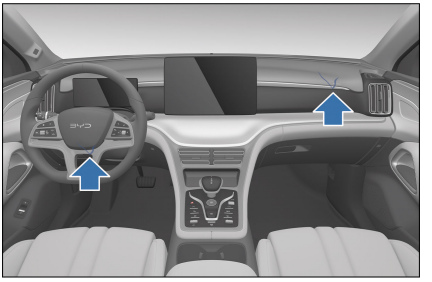
- Any airbag has deployed.
- Instrument cluster airbag warning light lights up abnormally.
- An impact to a vehicle door (shaded part in the figure) in an accident is not adequate to cause the airbag to deploy.



- An impact to a vehicle door (shaded part in the figure) in an accident is not adequate to cause the airbag to deploy.



- The airbag cover (highlighted area shown) has been scratched, cracked or otherwise damaged.



- The surface of the seat with a side airbag is scratched, cracked, or damaged similarly.
- Decorative (liner) parts at A-pillar with built-in curtain airbags, roof beam and C-pillar are scratched, cracked, or damaged similarly.
- Airbags need to be removed, disassembled, installed or repaired.

# Child Restraint Systems

## Child Restraint Systems

Child restraint systems provide good protection to your child in an accident. For the child's safety, please carefully read the instructions provided with the child restraint and in this manual before installing a child restraint.

**WARNING**

- When traveling by car, do not hold children in your arms.
- An appropriate child restraint system must be used for your child
- Please install the CRS correctly according to the installation instructions provided by the manufacturer.
- After the child restraint is dismounted from the seat, store it safely in your vehicle.
- Failure to follow the instructions provided by the CRS manufacturer and this manual may result in serious injury or even life-threatening injury to the child in an accident.

- Children must use a suitable child seat and ride in a comfortable and safe manner when riding in a car. Make sure that the child seat is positioned, installed and used correctly.
- If the child is too large to use a high-back child restraint, sit in the rear outboard seat and follow the child restraint manufacturer's installation instructions for using a booster seat attached to the lower anchorage, or use a seat belt.

**Important considerations for selecting a child restraint system**

- The child restraint system is the correct type and size for the child.
- The type and size of child restraints are appropriate for a particular seating position.
- Child restraints must comply with ECE R44/ECE R129.

**Passenger Airbag Switch**

- The front passenger airbag switch is located on the front passenger side of the instrument panel and can be accessed when the front passenger side door is opened. See ***P83*** for details.

**WARNING**

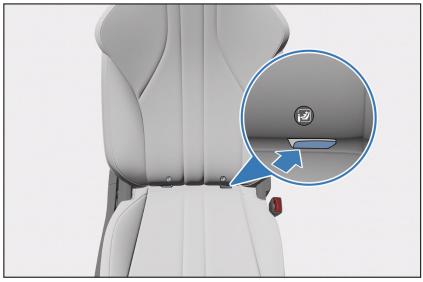
- Do not use the rear-facing child seat in the front passenger seat when the front passenger airbag is activated.

## Installing Child Restraint Systems

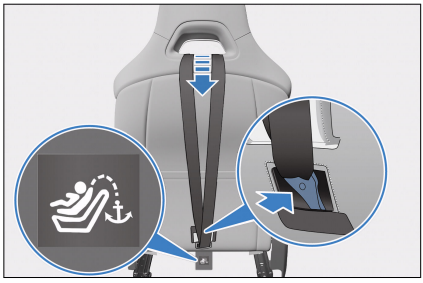
The vehicle is equipped with an ISOFIX/i-Size interface and a top strap anchor mount for mounting child restraints.

**Installation in the front seat**

- The front passenger seat is equipped with ISOFIX/i-Size anchorages. The anchorage locations are identified by a marking (see the illustration) located on the seat cushion, directly in front of the associated anchorages.



- The rear of the front passenger seat is equipped with a drawstring anchor support.



- When the child restraint is installed on the front passenger seat with the top tether, pass it through the hole under the head restraint.

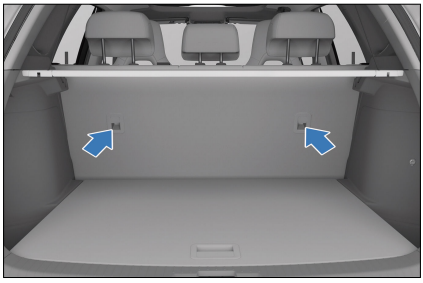


**Installation in the rear seat**

- The rear outboard seats are fitted with ISOFIX/i-Size anchorages. The anchorage locations are identified by a marking (see the illustration) located on the seat cushion, directly in front of the associated anchorages.



- The rear outboard seat backrests are equipped with drawstring anchor mounts.



1. Check the position of the ISOFIX/i-Size retaining bar to fit the child restraint to the seat.



**WARNING**

- When using the ISOFIX/i-Size anchor bar, ensure that there is no foreign material around the anchor and that the seat belt is not trapped behind the child seat. Ensure that the child restraint is

**WARNING**

securely fastened. Otherwise, it may cause serious or even life-threatening injuries to children in the event of emergency braking or an accident.

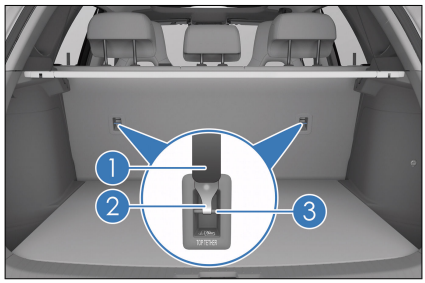
- Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harnesses, or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

2. When using a top strap mounted child restraint, secure the hook of the top strap to the anchor support and tighten the top strap to ensure that the top strap is secured.

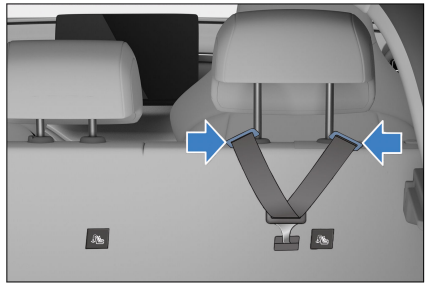
① Top tether

② Hook

③ Fixed anchor support




- When the child restraint is installed on a rear seat with a top tether, remove the shelf cover to gain access to the top tether anchor point and place it on the outside of each head restraint bar.



**CAUTION**

- The ISOFIX/i-Size retaining bar is located in the gap between the seat cushion and the seat back.

- Do not use the rear-facing child restraint system on the seat protected by the front airbag (in the activated state), otherwise, in case of an accident, the impact of the sharp opening of the front passenger airbag will cause serious injury to the child or even endanger his life.



- Please follow the warning precautions on the fromt passenger sunshade, as shown on the label in the picture.




**When installing the child seat on the front passenger seat, the following instructions must be observed:**

- Do not use the rear-facing child seat in the front passenger seat when the front passenger airbag is activated. After the rear-facing child restraint is removed from the front passenger seat, the front passenger airbag must be activated immediately.
- If necessary, adjust the front passenger seat rearward to protect the interior of the vehicle from children.
- If necessary, adjust the height of the front passenger seat and the angle of the backrest so that the child protection device can be installed firmly.
- When using a forward-facing child restraint in the front passenger seat, ensure that the seat is fully rearward and away from the activated airbag.
- Make sure that the belt strap passes through the guide without twisting and is not bent at the edge of the guide.

**When installing the child seat on the rear seat, the following instructions must be observed:**

- When the child restraint system is installed on any rear seat, The front seats can be adjusted forward, and the front seatback angle can be rotated, to ensure there is no contact of the front seats to the child.
- The headrest can be adjusted or even removed to ensure that the seat back firmly supports the child restraint.
- If the child seat does not have a backrest, do not remove the head restraint, adjust the head restraint to the locked position.
- When the child seat installed in the outer rear row is equipped with a top pull strap, the top pull strap fixing rod can be found after removing the cargo cover. Store the removed cargo cover safely in the vehicle.
- Refer to the child restraint instructions for detailed installation instructions.

**Installing Child Restraint Systems**

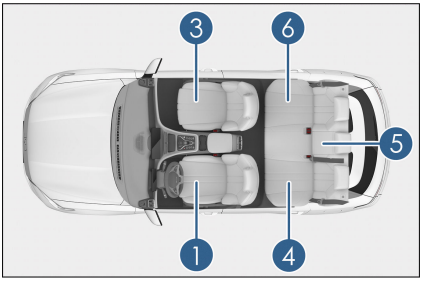
① Driver seat

③ Passenger seat

④ Rear left seat

⑤ Rear middle seat

⑥ Rear right seat




**CAUTION**

- This figure shows the seating position of the LHD model. For RHD models, the reference position of the front seats is reversed.

The following table shows the ISOFIX or i-Size anchorage mounting options for ISOFIX or i-Size child restraint systems in individual vehicle seating positions.

| | Seating position | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | 3 | | | | |
| | 1 | Front passenger airbag activated[a] ) | F Front passenger airbag not activated a) | 4[b)] | 5[b)] | 6[b)] |
| Seat position for universal safety belt | X | YES (Forward-facing only) | YES | YES | YES | YES |
| Seat position for i-size | X | YES (Forward-facing only) | YES | YES | NO | YES |
| Largest applicable horizontal child restraint systems | X | NO | NO | NO | NO | NO |
| Largest applicable rear-facing child restraint systems | X | R1 / R2X / R2 / R3 | R1 / R2X / R2 / R3 | R1 / R2X / R2 / R3 | NO | R1 / R2X / R2 / R3 |
| Largest applicable forward-facing child restraint systems | X | F2X / F2 / F3 | F2X / F2 / F3 | F2X / F2 / F3 | NO | F2X / F2 / F3 |
| Suitable for support legs | X | B2 / B3 | B2 / B3 | B2 / B3 | B2 / B3 | B2 / B3 |
| Suitable for support legs | X | YES | YES | YES | NO | YES |

[a)]: The front seats must be positioned fully rearward and fully downward. The front seat belt upper anchorage should be adjusted to the lowest position. If necessary, adjust the

| Seating position | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | 3 | | 4[b)] | 5[b)] | 6[b)] |
| | Front passenger airbag activated[a)] | F Front passenger airbag not activated[a)] | | | |

front seat back vertically and/or adjust or remove the head restraint to ensure that the child restraint system is in direct contact with the front seat back.

[b)]: If necessary, to ensure the child restraint system has direct contact to the rear seatback, the head restraint should be adjusted or removed.

X: Seat position not suitable for securing a child restraint system.

Recommended Child Restraint Systems:
Population and child height according to ECE R129.

| Group | Child Height (cm) | Manufacturer | Manufacturer | Remarks: |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0 | <83 | Maxi-Cosi | Pebble 360 | Belted |
| 0+/1 | 76-105 | Britax Römer | Trifix 2 i-Size | ISOFIX and belted |
| 2 | <135 | Britax Römer | Kidfix i-Size [a)] | ISOFIX and belted |
| 3 | <150 | Osann | Boost | Belted |

[a)] Ensure that:

- The lap belt is in the safety guard.
- The cross belt is not in the safety guard.
- SICT components are installed correctly.

① Group 0

② Group 0+/1

③ Group 2

④ Group 3

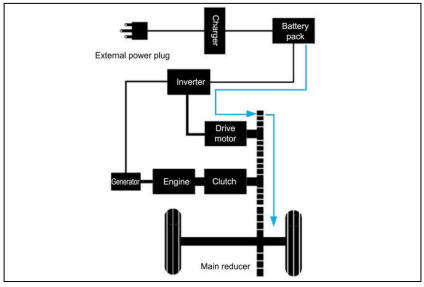


# Working Modes of Dual-Mode (DM) System

## Working Modes of Dual-Mode (DM) System

**"EV" - Pure Electric Operating Mode:**

- In pure electric operating mode, the high-voltage battery provides electric energy to drive the vehicle by the electric motor, and this mode can meet a variety of operating conditions, such as starting, reversing, crawling, accelerating, and driving at a constant speed.

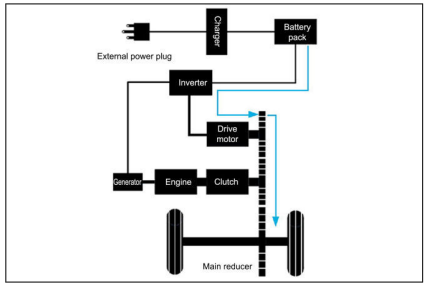



**REMINDER**

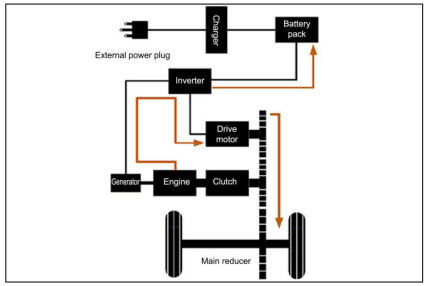
- The vehicle may switch to HEV mode automatically under operating conditions such as rapid acceleration, high vehicle speed, grade climbing, too high or low temperature, or low SOC level. Switch to EV mode manually if needed when EV conditions are meeted. It is recommanded to choose HEV mode under high or low temperature conditions.

**"HEV" - Dual-Mode Synergy Operating Mode:**

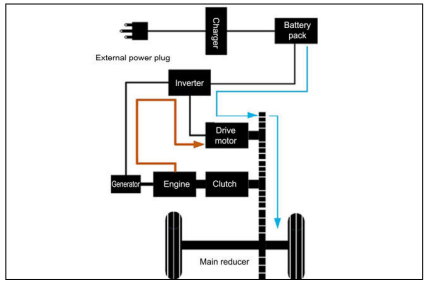
- In HEV mode, when the SOC level is high or the power demand is low, the vehicle system prioritizes EV drive, without starting the engine.
- In HEV mode, when the SOC level is low or the power demand is high, the engine starts and operates in series to meet the power demand.



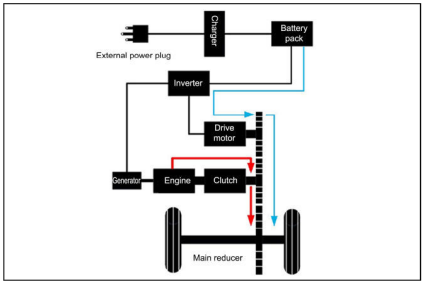

- In HEV mode, the engine supplies power to the high-voltage battery and drive motor.



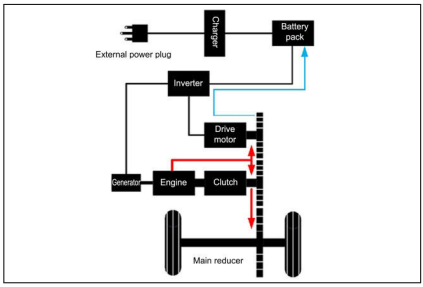

- In HEV mode, the engine and the high-voltage battery simultaneously supply power to the drive motor.



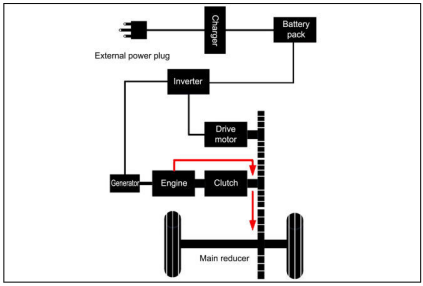
- In HEV mode, the engine starts to operate in parallel at medium and high speeds under some working conditions to improve fuel economy.
  - In HEV mode, the engine and drive motor work together to drive the vehicle.




  - In HEV mode, the engine drives the vehicle and simultaneously drives the motor to generate electricity for energy recycling.




  - In HEV mode, the engine drives the vehicle and the drive motor rests.

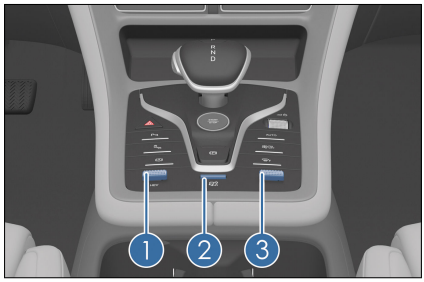



## Working Mode Selection of Dual-Mode (DM) System

① EV/HEV mode

② Snow mode button

③ MODE




**EV-ECO Drive Mode:**

- Toggle the EV/HEV switch forward, and the EV indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in the EV mode. Toggle the MODE switch continuously until the ECO indicator on the instrument cluster lights up. This indicates that the vehicle has switched to Ecology, Conservation, Optimization (ECO) to minimize power consumption.

**EV-NORMAL Drive Mode:**

- Toggle the EV/HEV switch forward, and the EV indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in the EV mode. Toggle the MODE switch continuously until the NORMAL indicator on the instrument cluster lights up. This indicates that the vehicle has switched to Normal (NORMAL) mode to ensure ride comfort and control power consumption.

**EV-SPORT Drive Mode:**

- Toggle the EV/HEV switch forward, and the EV indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the

vehicle is in the EV mode. Toggle the MODE switch continuously until the SPORT indicator on the instrument cluster lights up. This indicates that the vehicle has switched to Sport (SPORT) mode to ensure the best power performance.

**HEV-ECO Drive Mode:**

- Toggle the EV/HEV switch backward, and the HEV indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in the HEV mode. Toggle the MODE switch continuously until the ECO indicator on the instrument cluster lights up. This indicates that the vehicle has switched to ECO mode for the best fuel economy.

**HEV-NORMAL Drive Mode:**

- Toggle the EV/HEV switch backward, and the HEV indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in the HEV mode. Toggle the MODE switch continuously until the NORMAL indicator on the instrument cluster lights up. This indicates that the vehicle has switched to Normal (NORMAL) mode to ensure ride comfort and fuel economy.

**HEV-SPORT Drive Mode:**

- Toggle the EV/HEV switch backward, and the HEV indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in the HEV mode. Toggle the MODE switch continuously until the SPORT indicator on the instrument cluster lights up. This indicates that the vehicle has switched to SPORT mode to ensure the best power performance.

**Snow Mode**

- Press the Snow mode button to activate/deactivate this mode. This mode can be activated during driving on snowy, wet, or slippery road surfaces.

## Precautions for Working Modes of Dual-Mode (DM) System

**When the vehicle operates in hybrid synergy mode, pay attention to the following:**

- The performance of the high-voltage battery degrades in high- and low-temperature environments. To prevent the high-voltage battery from being damaged, the following protection mechanisms are set:
  - When the temperature is too high or too low, the vehicle system limits the charging and discharging power and SOC level.
  - When the temperature is lower than -30°C or higher than 60°C, the battery cannot be charged.
  - When the temperature is lower than -35°C or higher than 60°C, the battery cannot discharge.
- It is recommended to use the vehicle in an environment above -20°C. In the event of the above special circumstances, it is recommended to drive thevehicle by using the engine.
- The optimum temperature of the battery is 25°C. When the temperature is too high or too low, the output power of the battery is limited, so the driving range of the vehicle in pure electric mode is shortened.

**Attention to high voltage and high temperature Components**

- The high-voltage battery and other high-voltage components of the vehicle are connected by orange cables.

**WARNING**

- Do not touch the orange cable or the power battery electrode. Electric shock may cause serious or even life-threatening injuries.
- Please read all warning labels.

- The motor, coolant radiator, and some other components may reach high temperatures during driving. These parts are attached warning labels. Please carefully read and follow the instructions on these warning labels.

**WARNING**

- Do not remove or disassemble any high-voltage parts, otherwise serious or even life-threatening injuries may be caused.
- In the event of collision, flooding, and other situations that may cause damage to the high-voltage system, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider as soon as possible for inspection to avoid the risk of electric shock.
- Do not continue to use the vehicle to avoid the risk of electric shock if the vehicle gives a warning of electric leakage or a BYD authorized dealer or service provider has diagnosed that the vehicle has electric leakage.
- Touching parts with high voltage causes electric shock, thus resulting in serious or even life-threatening injuries.

- For the vehicle is driven by gasoline engine and motor, the engine sound may be heard from the engine compartment.
- When the vehicle powered on or off, it may hear the sound (sound of contactor closing or opening) from high-voltage components under the auxiliary dashboard, which is not a fault.
- If the indicator "OK" stays on, it indicates that the vehicle can be driven, even if the fuel engine is not started (driven by the motor only).
- Be sure to press the "P" button when parking. When "P" or "N" gear is engaged, if the SOC is lower than a certain level, the engine maystart to charge the high-voltage battery. If the "N", "R", or "D" gear is engaged for a long period of time, it may cause a system failure. Therefore, after the gear is engaged, be sure to release the shift lever. When leaving the vehicle, be sure to pull up the EPB switch, press the “P” button, take away the key, and lock all doors.
- If the low-voltage battery fails and the power is completely exhausted, even the external power supply cannot be used for starts, please contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

**WARNING**

- Be sure to turn off the powertrain when leaving the vehicle.
- Be sure to press the "P" button, because the vehicle can also be started (driven by the motor) when the "OK" indicator is on, even if the engine is shut down.
- With the "OK" indicator on, if the gearshift lever is shifted to the "R" or "D" position, when the brake pedal is not depressed, the vehicle will travel at a low speed. Be sure to pay attention to this situation.

- It is recommended to consult a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for vehicle repair or maintenance.
- If the vehicle cannot be repaired due to an accidentor other reasons, consult a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- It is recommended to consult a BYD authorized dealer or service provider before handling the vehicle because it uses a sealed low-voltage battery.

**WARNING**

- In the event of an accident, perform the following operations to reduce the risk of high-voltage electric leakage.
  - Move the vehicle to a safe place.
  - Press the brake pedal and pull up the EPB switch.
  - Press the P button to shut down the dual-mode system.
- If the vehicle is severely damaged, there may be a risk of electric shock. To avoid electric shock, do not touch any high-voltage components (such as battery assembly) or cables (in orange) connecting components. If there are bare wires with destroyed insulation inside or outside the vehicle, do not touch them to avoid electric shock.
- If the liquid leaks into some parts of the vehicle, do not touch the liquid, because it may be the electrolyte of the low-voltage battery. If the fluid contacts the skin or eyes, flush with plenty of water (preferably boric acid solution) and seek medical attention to avoid severe injury.
- If the vehicle catches fire, use a special fire extinguisher to put out

**WARNING**

the fire or wait for the arrival of firefighters.

- If the vehicle needs to be towed, please tow it with all four wheels off the ground. If the wheels touch the ground during towing, the motor may continue to generate electricity, resulting in electric leakage.



# Anti-theft System

## Anti-theft System

If the vehicle is in anti-theft state and any door is opened, the system will sound an alarm and the turn signals will flash to prevent the vehicle from being stolen.



**Enabling Anti-theft System**

1. Power off the vehicle.
2. Have all occupants exit the vehicle.
3. Lock all doors. After 10s since all doors have locked, the anti-theft system is automatically activated.
4. After the theft deterrent system has been set, you can leave the vehicle. Make sure no passengers are in the vehicle while setting the alarm. Unlocking any door from the inside can activate the system.

**Triggering the Alarm**

- The anti-theft alarm is triggered when:
  - Any door, tailgate or hood is unlocked without using the smart key access function.

**Releasing the Alarm**

- The anti-theft alarm is released when:
  - Doors are unlocked with the smart key;
  - Using the microswitch to unlock the door by carrying a valid smart key.
  - The tailgate is opened remotely with the smart key;
  - The vehicle is started remotely with the smart key;
  - The START/STOP button is pressed with the smart key inside the vehicle.

**WARNING**

- Do not modify the anti-theft system by means of alteration or addition. Otherwise, the system may fail.

**Driving password**

- When the user has vehicle anti-theft requirements, put the vehicle in "P" gear, enter multimedia touchscreen → Settings → Locks, click the driving password setting item to open the driving password function according to the guidance.
- After the function is enabled, when the user brakes or engages the gear, the central control screen will pop up a window to input the password interface. The user can remove the gear disable by inputting the correct password. After the password input times reach the upper limit, the vehicle enters the anti-theft state. The anti-theft state can be removed and the normal use of the vehicle can be restored according to the prompt of the central control screen.
- When you forget your password, please click Forgot Password in the password input interface and change the password according to the prompt.
- Close the driving password. The user clicks the driving password setting item and enters the correct password to close the driving password.

**CAUTION**

- When operating the driving password setting, please put the vehicle in "P" gear in advance;
- The driving password is only used to unlock the remote control key or the remote control key is used to cooperate with the micro switch, and the operation of unlocking the mobile phone is not restricted;
- After the driving password is turned on, the central control screen fails when the vehicle is powered on. If the black screen cannot be input, resulting in the failure of driving, please contact the authorized service shop of Biyedi Automobile to deal with it.

# Data Collection and Processing

## Data Collection and Processing

- This section provides you with some important information on how

personal data is collected and processed when you use a BYD vehicle.

- For a more detailed overview on data processing, data protection and data subject rights, please read the current version of the privacy policy for the vehicle available at the multimedia touchscreen → Settings → System → More → Privacy Policy).
- This vehicle is equipped with an Event Data Recorder (EDR). EDR mainly records data in the event of a crash or near-crash (for example, airbag deployment or hitting on a roadside obstacle) to help comprehend the vehicle system operation, such as:
  - Vehicle Velocity:
  - Tire pressure condition
  - Cruise control system status
  - Whether the seat belt is fastened
- The vehicle records EDR data only when there is a crash or when a near-crash event reaches a certain extent. The EDR does not record any data during the normal driving of the vehicle.
  - The data recorded by the EDR system provides an understanding of the state of the vehicle's safety-related systems when an accident occurs, so that relevant parties can analyze the accident.
  - The EDR data needs to be accessed and read by special equipment. BYD discloses your personal data to third parties only if this is legally permissible or you have consented to it. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, third-party agencies with professional equipment (such as government agencies) can also read the EDR data if they have access to the vehicle EDR and equipment (for example, The data from the airbag control unit can be read out to clarify the accident).

**Vehicle Data Processing**

- Data is collected when the vehicle is used, such as data collected or transmitted by vehicle sensors or control units, which is necessary for the safe functioning of your vehicle.
- In some cases, the data is used to support driving (driver assist systems) or to enable a specific comfort or multimedia function.
- Personal data that is collected and processed mainly include in-vehicle data, remote-services-related data, and other data, as further specified below.

**In-vehicle Data**

Operation data

- When the vehicle is used, various vehicle status data (e.g., speed, battery level, and braking system) or environment (e.g., distance sensors, rain sensor, and temperature) data is collected and processed.
- This data is not usually stored, but there are control units, sensors or other components installed in the vehicle that record such data, for example, to record maintenance requirements, error messages, or other information.
- The in-vehicle data will only be stored in the equipment in the vehicle but can be read out via the legally required OBD ("On Board Diagnostics") interface, for example, by BYD authorized dealer or service provider or other third parties.
- In case this access takes place during vehicle maintenance, the information can also be transmitted to BYD engineers for quality assurance,

product defect reports, or customer claim verification.

**Remote-Services-Related Data**

Remote monitoring services

- The vehicle is equipped remote monitoring services such as remote diagnosis and over-the-air (OTA) updates and upgrades for security and safety purposes (subject to owner's approval).
- These monitoring services serve the following purposes: service provision (remote support/diagnostics), product development, and security/public safety.
- Depending on the country and setup, various vehicle information can be transmitted to BYD's data center in corresponding market for the above purposes, including vehicle location information, vehicle status, such as energy consumption, vehicle speed, gear position, power mode, ESC status, steering system status, battery status, powertrain status, and overall vehicle performance status.

**Other**

Multimedia System

- Depending on vehicle configuration, data can be added to the multimedia system by the users themselves, such as media data for playing video on the multimedia system, address data for use in the navigation system, or data for use in online services.
- Depending on vehicle configuration, individual settings in and on the vehicle can also be entered.
- Data stored in the vehicle can be deleted at any time.
- BYD has no control over data transferred to third parties (from the use of third party content, in particular as part of online services).

Integration of mobile devices

- Depending on vehicle configurations, mobile devices can be connected and controlled through the vehicle's multimedia system.
- It may be necessary that the device's screen or audio is displayed/played through the multimedia system or transmitted to it.
- Additional data like positioning or vehicle information can be transmitted through applications for use in certain navigation systems, communication, or other third-party services.
- The specific type of data processing depends on the respective function and is controlled by the user or third parties such as the provider of the devices or corresponding services.

Internet access and connected services

- Depending on vehicle configurations, the Internet can be accessed for certain functions or BYD Europe services through the vehicle's multimedia system network devices.
- BYD is not liable for any such services provided by any other party.
- In such cases, please obtain information about the use of data from the provider of the respective online service.

Camera image recording/surrounding area monitoring

- Your vehicle is equipped with a number of cameras/sensors.
- The reason for this is that some vehicle functionalities require the vehicle's path to be detected and assessed which is done by cameras that detect objects in the vehicle's surroundings (e.g., obstacles).

- The images are transmitted to the respective control module for further analytics required to operate the systems.
- Some images are just processed on a volatile basis (RAM), others may be stored, depending on vehicle equipment.
- The vehicle may be equipped with an outward-facing camera (OFC) that can be used to take footage of the surrounding (dashcam).
- The vehicle may also be equipped with an inward-facing camera (IFC), which can be used to take footage inside the vehicle.
- Both OFC and IFC footage is stored.
- It is your responsibility to check the local legal requirements before turning on OFC or IFC (for example, the IFC use license should be acquired first in some countries or the use of dashcam OFC has severe restrictions in other countries).
- For more camera details, see section "Panoramic View System" in this manual.

**Permanent Vehicle Transfer to Third Parties and Offline Mode**

- In the case of a permanent transfer of the vehicle, i.e. if you sell the vehicle or permanently transfer the vehicle to someone else for use, you should note that the new user has access to any personalization/user settings made through the infotainment system (e.g. address list, navigation system, etc.).

**REMINDER**

- When the vehicle is scrapped or transferred, it is recommended

**REMINDER**

that you restore the factory settings to protect your privacy.

- You can also restrict your vehicle's communication with the BYD data server and the processing of vehicle-related and personal data by setting the vehicle to offline mode.
  - On the multimedia touchscreen, tap to turn Wi-Fi off.
  - The WLAN can also be turned off by: Tapping multimedia touchscreen → Settings → System → Internet → WLAN → Off.

**Disclosure of Personal Data to Authorities**

- BYD discloses your personal data to third parties only if this is legally permissible or you have consented to it.
- However, according to applicable laws, government agencies may be authorized to read data from the vehicle (e.g., data can be read from an airbag control unit to clarify an incident).
- According to law, BYD may also be obliged to disclose data to governmental authorities in your country/region upon request, for example, during criminal investigations.

**Your Data Protection Rights**

- BYD has staunch respect for its customer's privacy, and strictly complies with all data protection laws, in particular the General Data Protection Regulation (GDPR) and applicable local laws.

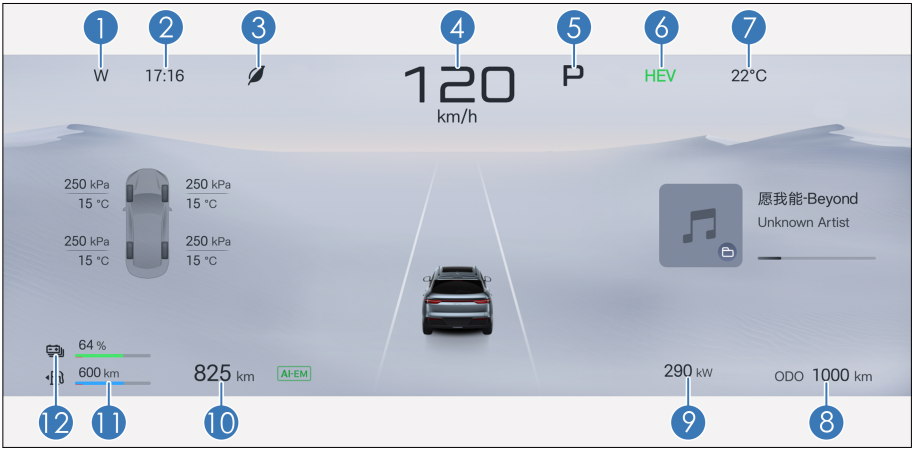
- According to these laws, owners have specific rights when their personal data is processed:
  - Data subjects have the right of information and access, to rectification, erasure of personal data ("right to be forgotten") and the right to object to the processing of personal data or to restrict it (or to withdraw consent given earlier, as well as the right to data portability).
- These rights may be limited in some cases. For example, if we can show that we have a legal obligation to process your data, or if providing the information to you would disclose personal data about another person, or if we are legally prevented from disclosing that information.
- In some cases, this may mean that we can retain the data even if you withdraw your consent.

# 02 INSTRUMENT CLUSTER

Instrument Cluster.....40

# Instrument Cluster

## Instrument Cluster View




| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | Orientation | 7 | Ambient temperature |
| 2 | Time | 8 | Odometer information |
| 3 | Driving mode | 9 | Power meter |
| 4 | Speedometer | 10 | Total driving range |
| 5 | Gear status | 11 | Fuel gauge |
| 6 | Power mode | 12 | SOC |

**Simple Mode Gauge View**




**REMINDER**

- In case of occasional communication delay of the instrument system, the safety instrument will automatically switch to the simple mode to ensure that the driving information can still be displayed normally without affecting the driving. After the system is normal, it will automatically exit the simple mode. If it is not restored continuously, the following operations can be tried to switch:

  1. Long press the power button below the multimedia touchscreen to restart the multimedia host and the instrument information display system;
  2. Restart the vehicle after confirming that the vehicle is safe.

**REMINDER**

- If the instrument cluster remains in simple mode after those actions have been taken, promptly contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection.
- The view of the combination instrument is for reference only. Please refer to the factory configuration for details.

## Instrument Cluster Indicators

**Indicators and Warning Lights**

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
|  | Turn signal indicator |  | Position light indicator |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
|  | High beam indicator |  | Rear fog light indicator |
|  | OK indicator |  | Comfort mode indicator |
|  | HEV indicator |  | Economic mode indicator |
|  | EV Indicator |  | Sport mode indicator |
|  | AVH indicator |  | Snow mode indicator |
|  | ACC standby indicator |  | ACC activation indicator |
|  | ICC standby indicator |  | ICC activation indicator |
|  | LDA activation indicator |  | ELKA activation indicator |
|  | BSD activation indicator |  | IHBC activation indicator |
|  | Discharge indicator |  | Hill descent control indicator |
|  | Indoor exhibition vehicle mode indicator |  | Exterior vehicle show indicator |
|  | ACC fault warning light |  | ICC fault warning light |
|  | LDA fault warning light |  | ELKA fault warning light |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
|  | BSD fault warning light |  | IHBC fault warning light |
|  | Main alarm indicator |  | EPB indicator |
|  | Low fuel warning light |  | Oil life monitoring indicator |
|  | Smart key warning light |  | High-voltage battery low SOC warning light |
|  | Tire pressure fault warning light |  | ABS fault warning light |
|  | Driving power limit warning light |  | Engine fault warning light |
|  | ESC OFF warning light |  | ESC fault warning light |
|  | AEB warning light |  | PAS warning light |
|  | Seat belt reminder |  | SRS fault warning light |
|  | Steering system fault warning light |  | Low oil pressure warning light |
|  | Low-voltage power system fault warning light |  | Powertrain fault warning light |
|  | Engine coolant overheating warning light |  | Motor coolant overheating indicator |
|  | Motor overheating warning light |  | Motor fault warning light |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
|  | High-voltage battery overheating warning light |  | High-voltage battery fault warning light |
|  | Charging connection indicator |  | TSR indicator |

**Indicators/Warning Lights Description**

 Smart key warning light

- Press the START/STOP button. If the key is not inside the vehicle, the warning light lights up for several seconds, the speaker sounds once, and the display screen displays "No key is detected. Please confirm whether it is inside the vehicle".
- If the START/STOP button is pressed with the key inside the vehicle, this warning light does not light up, and the vehicle can be powered on.
- This warning light will disappear if the key is taken into the vehicle within a few seconds after the light turns on. The vehicle can be powered on now.
- If the warning light flashes when the START/STOP button is pressed, it indicates low battery of the key.

 Tire pressure fault warning light

- With the vehicle powered ON, this warning light is on. It turns off in a few seconds if the tire pressure monitoring system is working properly. If the system fails, this warning light turns on again.
- When the tire pressure fault warning light lights up or flashes, the information display on the instrument cluster reads "Please check the tire pressure monitoring system" and the tire pressure is displayed as "---" on the screen, it indicates that the tire pressure system is faulty.
- When this indicator stays on, along with one or more figures shown on the tire pressure display interface of the dashboard display screen turning yellow, it indicates low pressure in one or more tires.

In any of the above cases, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection as soon as possible.

 Main alarm indicator

If this indicator is on, it indicates that there is a fault prompt or warning information in the information display area.

 ESC OFF warning light

- When the "ESC OFF" button is pressed, the light should illuminate and stay on and the ESC system would not work. When the "ESC OFF" button is pressed again, it shall go out, and the ESC system functions normally.

**REMINDER**

- While the ESC OFF warning light is on, the driver must stay alert and keep driving at a lower speed when making a sharp turn and when avoiding an obstacle which appears suddenly, Because the

**REMINDER**

ESC system does not function during braking in such a situation, the vehicle will become unstable.



ESC Fault Warning Light

- After the vehicle is started, when the power gear is in the "OK" gear, the warning light is on. IfESC system works properly, this warning light turns off after a few seconds. If the system fails, this warning light turns on again until the system fault is eliminated.
- If the ESC warning light flashes temporarily while the vehicle is in motion, it indicates the ESC system is working.
- When the ESC warning light turns on (with the ABS fault warning light and the parking system fault warning light off), the ESC fails, but the ABS and the braking system continue to operate normally.
- When the ESC warning light turns on (with the ABS fault warning light and the parking system fault warning light off), the ESC system does not work. This means the vehicle is extremely unstable at sharp turns or when the driver steers away from obstacles ahead.
- If any of the following cases occurs, it means there is a fault in components monitored by the warning light system. In that case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for vehicle inspection as soon as possible:
  - This warning light remains off (self-check not performed) after the vehicle is powered on.
  - This warning light stays on during driving.

**REMINDER**

- Momentary illumination of this warning light during operation does not indicate a problem.
- If the ESC warning light remains on while the warning lights for the ABS and the braking system are on, immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider. Because the vehicle becomes extremely unstable when braking and the ABS does not work.



Low fuel warning light

This indicator is located on the fuel gauge. If on, it indicates little fuel in the fuel tank and reminds the driver that the fuel is about to be used up. Should this occur, refuel the vehicle as soon as possible. When the fuel tank shakes on a slope or curve, the low fuel level warning light may be on earlier than usual.



Engine fault warning light

- With the vehicle powered ON, this fault warning light is on for self-check. If on at any other time, it indicates that a certain control system of the vehicle may be faulty. Even though abnormalities in vehicle performance may not be noticed, continuous operation in this state may cause serious damage to the vehicle.
- If this warning light lights up during non-self-check, drive the vehicle to the roadside safely, power the vehicle off, power it on again, start the engine and check this warning light. If this warning light is still on, drive the vehicle to a BYD authorized dealer or

service provider for inspection as soon as possible. Before the BYD authorized dealer or service provider finds out the fault, be careful to drive the vehicle and avoid driving at a high speed or fully pressing the accelerator pedal.

- If the fault warning light lights up frequently, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection, even if it goes out after the above steps are followed.

**CAUTION**

- Continuous driving after the engine fault warning light is on may cause damage to the engine.




ABS fault warning light

- With the vehicle powered ON, this warning light is on. If the ABS (anti-lock braking system) works properly, the light goes off in a few seconds. If the system fails, it lights up again until the fault is eliminated.
- When the ABS fault warning light is on (the parking system fault warning light goes out), the ABS does not work, but the parking system still works normally.
- When the ABS fault warning light is on (with the parking system fault warning light off), since the anti-lock braking system does not operate, the wheels will be locked in case of emergency braking or braking on a slippery road.
- If any of the following cases occurs, it means there is a fault in components monitored by the warning light system. In that case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for vehicle inspection as soon as possible.
  - With the vehicle powered on, this warning light does not light up or stays on.
  - This warning light turns on during driving.

**REMINDER**

- Momentary illumination of this warning light during operation does not indicate a problem.
- If the parking system fault warning light and ABS fault warning light go on at the same time, immediately park the vehicle in a safe place and contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider. Because if the brake operation is performed at this time, not only the ABS does not work, but the vehicle also becomes extremely unstable.

- If both ABS indicator and the braking system indicator come on and the electronic parking brake (EPB) is fully released, the braking force distribution system of front and rear wheels has also failed.



Driving power limit warning light

If this indicator illuminates when the vehicle power is limited, contact a BYD authorized service provider in time.



Seat belt reminder

With the vehicle powered on, if any passenger on the front seats or rear seats* has not buckled up, the seat belt reminder indicator lights up. Unless the seat belt is fastened, the indicator stays on.



SRS fault warning light

- With the vehicle powered on/ok, this warning light is on. If the airbag system works normally, it goes out after 5 seconds. This warning light is used to monitor the SRS ECU, collision sensor, inflator, warning light, wiring and power supply.
- If any of the following conditions occurs, it indicates a fault in a component monitored by the warning light system. In this case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection as soon as possible:
  - With the vehicle powered on, this warning light does not light up or stays on.
  - This warning light turns on during driving.



Steering system fault warning light

- When the warning light stays on, it indicates that the steering system is faulty. In this case, drive the vehicle to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection.
  - If the steering wheel is turned frequently in place for a long time, the steering system boosting effect will decrease to prevent over temperature of the system, resulting in heavy steering when operating the steering wheel. In this case, avoid frequently turning the steering wheel or stopping the vehicle and turning off the engine; the system will return to normal in 10 min.

**REMINDER**

- A motor is used in the steering system to reduce the force required to turn the steering wheel.
- When turning the steering wheel, you may hear the motor humming when it is working. This does not indicate a failure.
- The duration of turning the steering wheel to the limit position does not exceed 5s. Otherwise, the temperature protection is activated, resulting in heavy steering or damage.

- When the steering wheel is turned frequently in situ for a long time, the steering system fault warning light does not go on, but it feels hard to turn. This phenomenon is a non-failure mode.
  - If the steering wheel is turned frequently in place for a long time, the steering system boosting effect will decrease to prevent over temperature of the system, resulting in heavy steering when operating the steering wheel. In this case, avoid frequently turning the steering wheel or stopping the vehicle and turning off the engine; the system will return to normal in 10 min.

**WARNING**

- If the steering system fault warning light goes on, immediately park the vehicle in a safe place and contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.



Parking system fault warning light

- This warning light will illuminate when the brake fluid level is low or the braking system becomes faulty.
- In any of the following cases, park the vehicle in a safe place immediately and contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
  - This warning light illuminates when the brake fluid level is low with the power ON.

**REMINDER**

- When the brake fluid level is low, do not drive the vehicle continuously because it is very dangerous.

  - When the engine is running, this warning light stays on if the brake fluid level is normal and the EPB system works normally (the EPB switch is pulled up and released normally, and there is no prompt of "Please check the EPB system").
  - The parking system fault warning light and ABS fault warning light go on at the same time.

**REMINDER**

- Momentary illumination of this warning light during operation does not indicate a problem.



Low-voltage power system fault warning light

If this warning light turns on while driving, it indicates that there is a problem with the charging system/ DC system/low-voltage power supply. The engine ignition can only maintain till the battery is fully discharged. Turn off the A/C and fan, and drive the vehicle to the nearest BYD authorized dealer or service provider for maintenance.



Low oil pressure warning light

- The light means low oil pressure. If this warning light flashes or remains on during driving, park the vehicle in a safe place, shut down the engine immediately, and contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for help.
- When the engine is idling, this warning light may flash occasionally, or go on momentarily after emergency braking. When the engine is accelerating gradually, if this indicator goes out, the oil pressure is normal.

**CAUTION**

- Do not drive the vehicle when the warning light is on, even for a short distance. Otherwise, the engine is damaged.



Engine coolant overheating indicator

If this warning light keeps lighting up, it indicates motor coolant over temperature. In this case, stop the vehicle in order to cool down.



High-voltage battery overheating warning light

- If this indicator is on, it indicates that the high-voltage battery is too hot. Should this occur, stop the vehicle immediately to let it cool down. If the indicator flashes, stop the vehicle immediately and leave it as soon as possible.
- The high-voltage battery may be overheated under the following operating conditions. For example:
  - Long-distance climbing in hot weather.

- Long stop-and-go traffic state, frequent rapid acceleration and braking, or continuous running without rest.

 High-voltage battery fault warning light

- This warning light comes on when the ignition has just been switched on. If the power battery system works properly, it goes out after a few seconds. If the system is faulty, it goes on again. It is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection as soon as possible.
- If any of the following cases occurs, it means there is a fault in components monitored by the warning light system. In that case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for vehicle inspection as soon as possible.
  - With the vehicle powered on, this warning light stays on.
  - This indicator stays on or lights up from time to time during driving.

 Powertrain fault warning light

- If the powertrain is faulty, this warning light goes on.
- If any of the following conditions occurs, it indicates a fault in a component monitored by the warning light system. In this case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection as soon as possible:
  - With the vehicle powered on, this warning light stays on.
  - This warning light turns on during driving.

**CAUTION**

- If the warning light is on, try not to drive the vehicle, but contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for troubleshooting as soon as possible.

 TSR indicator

If this indicator lights up, it indicates that the system recognizes the speed limit of the current road section.

**REMINDER**

- The long-time EV mode driving may trigger engine starting request for maintenance. The instrument cluster shows: The engine is started automatically for maintenance.

**Other Instrument Cluster Fault Prompts**

The following fault messages may appear on the instrument. Please operate according to the recommended handling method:

| Displays the icon | Error Message | Response |
|---|---|---|
| | Please check the OBC system | The vehicle charging system is faulty. Please check whether the charging connection is abnormal and reconnect the charging equipment. If it can not be solved, it is |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| | | recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider. |
| | Please check the vehicle network | The vehicle may be disconnected from the data network. In this case, park the vehicle immediately, and contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider. |
| | Engine accessories function limited | The engine accessories function is faulty. In this case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider. |
| | Please check the memory system | The memory system is faulty. In this case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider. |
|  | EV power limited | The EV function is limited. Contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider immediately. |
|  | Please check the PCW system | The PCW system is faulty. In this case, park the vehicle, and contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider. |
| | The AEB function is limited | The AEB system is faulty. In this case, park the vehicle, and contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider. |
|  | Please check the BSD system | The BSD system is faulty. In this case, park the vehicle, and contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider. |
| | The BSD function is limited | The BSD function is limited. In this case, park the vehicle, and contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider. |
|  | Please check the gear | The shifter controller is faulty. In this case, park the vehicle immediately, and contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider. |
|  | Please check the multi-function video controller* | The multi-function video controller is faulty. In this case, park the vehicle, and contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider. |
| | The function of the multi-function video controller is limited* | The function of the multi-function video controller is limited. In this case, park the vehicle, and contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider. |
|  | Intelligent-camera is not available due to environment condition* | The intelligent-camera is unavailable. In this case, park the vehicle, and contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
|  | Solenoid valve is cleaning. Please wait for a moment. | Solenoid valve is cleaning and park the vehicle to wait. If the icon exits for a long time, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider. |
|  | Please check the Lane Departure Assist (LDA) System | The lane departure warning system (LDWS) is faulty. In this case, park the vehicle, and contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider. |
|  | Please check the Lane Keeping System (LKS) | The lane keep system (LKS) is faulty. In this case, park the vehicle, and contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider. |
| | The ELKA function is limited | The LKS function is limited. In this case, park the vehicle, and contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider. |
|  | The clutch temperature is high. Park the vehicle for cooling. | If the icon exits for a long time, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider. |

# 03 CONTROLLER OPERATION

Doors and Keys..... 54
Seat..... 67
Steering Wheel..... 70
Wipers..... 73
Rearview Mirror..... 76
Switches..... 78

# Doors and Keys

## Keys

The vehicle is equipped with a key that can unlock/lock the door and start the vehicle. The key includes an electronic smart key, a mechanical key (installed in the electronic smart key), a Bluetooth key and an NFC digital key.

### Electronic Smart Key

Electronic smart key — All doors can be unlocked/locked by pressing the left and right front door micro switches with the electronic smart key; it can also realize the functions of key remote unlocking, one-button start, no-power mode start, remote car search, remote start, remote back door, low battery reminder, etc.

When the electronic smart key stands for more than 1min, the smart key actively enters the sleep state. At this time, the functions of the microswitch such as unlocking or starting the vehicle fail to prevent others from using relay attacks to enter or start the vehicle; Moving the smart key again or pressing the key button can release the sleep state and the vehicle function returns to normal.

Model: D0-92/D1-92

Operating power supply: button cell battery

Battery model: CR2032

Nominal voltage: 3V

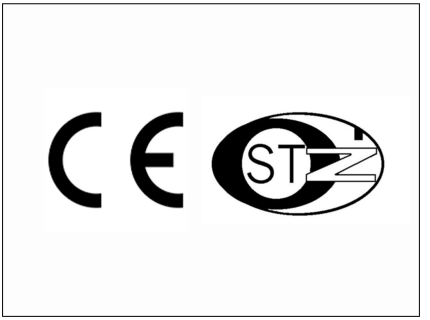
Operating voltage: 2.9V~3.3V

Normal operating current: 8mA (nominal current)

Low-frequency resonance frequency: 125KHZ

Key operating frequency: 434MHz

FCC ID: 2A5DH-DAEA-92



This equipment is not entitled to protection against harmful interference and may not cause interference to duly authorized systems.

① Lock button

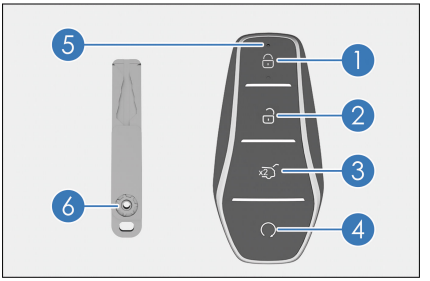
② Unlock button

③ Tailgate open button

④ START/STOP button

⑤ Indicator

⑥ Mechanical key




**WARNING**

Button battery safety warnings:

- The button (coin) battery in the vehicle key is hazardous and both new and used batteries are to be

**WARNING**

kpet away from children at all times.

- If swallowed or placed inside any part of the body, a lithium battery can cause severe or fatal injuries in 2 hours or less.
- Medical attention should be sought immediately if it is suspected the battery has been swallowed or placed inside any part of the body.

**CAUTION**

- The electronic smart key is an electronic component. The following instructions should be observed to prevent damage to the electronic smart key.
  - Do not expose the smart key to high temperatures, such as on the dashboard.
  - Do not disassemble the smart key at will.
  - Do not hit other objects with the smart key or drop it.
  - Do not inmmerse the key in water or clean it in the ultrasonic scrubber.
  - Do not place smart key with devices that emit electromagnetic waves, such as the mobile phone.
  - Do not attach any objects (such as a metal seal) which cut off electromagnetic wave signals when using the card.
  - You can register a spare key for the same vehicle. In this case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider immediately.

**CAUTION**

- If the electronic smart key cannot operate the door within the normal distance, or the key indicator light is dim or off:
  - Check for nearby radio stations or airport radio transmitters that interfere with the normal operation of electronic smart keys.
  - The battery of an electronic smart key may be exhausted. Check the battery inside the electronic smart key. It is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection as soon as possible.
- If the smart key is lost or fails, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider as soon as possible to reduce the risk of vehicle theft or accidents.
- Do not change the transmission frequency arbitrarily, increase the transmission power (including additional transmission frequency amplifier), do not arbitrarily connect the external detection antenna or switch other transmitting detection antennas.
- Do not cause harmful interference to legitimate radio communication services when used; once there is interference, stop using it immediately and take measures to eliminate the interference before continuing to use it.
- The use of micropower radio equipment must be free from interference of all radio services or from radiation of equipments for

**⚠ CAUTION**

industrial, scientific and medical applications.

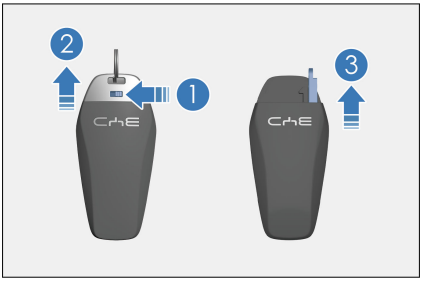
- Do not use it near aircraft or airports.
- People implanted with pacemakers or defibrillators should stay away from the detection antennas of intelligent entry and start systems, as electromagnetic waves can affect the normal use of such devices.
- In addition to people implanted with pacemakers or defibrillators, those who use other electronic medical devices should also consult the manufacturer on the use of such devices under the influence of electromagnetic waves. Electromagnetic waves may bring unknown consequences to the use of such medical devices.
- When leaving the vehicle, always carry your key and lock the vehicle. Never leave anyone (especially children) alone in the vehicle.

**Mechanical Key**

Mechanical key (in the smart key) - Unlock/Lock the driver's door. Insert the mechanical key back into the smart key when it is not in use.

**Taking out the Mechanical Key**

- Slide the unlock clasp in the direction of arrow ①, then pull the key cap in the direction of arrow ②, and take out the mechanical key, as shown in the figure.




**Assemble the mechanical key**

- To return the mechanical key to its original position, insert it in the opposite direction of arrow ③ and close the key cap.

**Mobile Phone Bluetooth key**

- Use the BYD Bluetooth digital key to control the vehicle through a close-range mobile phone Bluetooth connection, including locking or unlocking the doors.
- You can download and install the latest BYD App in the app market. The function of Bluetooth digital key can be found in the app.
- For the vehicle with mobile phone Bluetooth car key configuration, the user can use the mobile phone Bluetooth car key after performing a short activation process in BYD App.
- Turn on the Bluetooth on your phone, approach the vehicle, and open the BYD App for automatic Bluetooth digital key connection. You can also connect it manually. The key is effective after Bluetooth is connected.
- The specific functions supported by the key are subject to the vehicle configuration. The key can be used without network. After the key connection, you can select operations, and the app will immediately send commands to control the vehicle.

- In order to ensure the use experience, when starting the vehicle, please use the Bluetooth key close to the driver position.

**CAUTION**

- Before activating the mobile phone Bluetooth vehicle key, it is necessary to ensure that the network signal at the vehicle end is good. If the activation fails, you can try to move the vehicle to a good network location and activate the Bluetooth key again on the application side.
- After the Bluetooth key of the mobile phone is unlocked, the door will be automatically locked without any operation in a short time.
- When the phone Bluetooth key fails to connect or fails to operate for many times, you can try to turn off the system Bluetooth and then turn it on, or try to restart the application.
- The use distance of mobile phone Bluetooth car key is limited by the environment around the car and the performance of the mobile phone. In the case of dense vehicles, the use distance will be shortened.
- The mobile phone Bluetooth key requires your mobile phone to turn on the Bluetooth switch. In case of any problem, please contact the dealer.

**NFC Digital Key**

- NFC is a digital key system provided by BYD. It allows you to register your phone or wearable device as your vehicle key, and unlock, lock and start your vehicle safely and easily.
- The following conditions are required to use the NFC digital key. Please ensure that all conditions are met before using it:
  - The vehicle has enabled the BYD Cloud service;
  - The vehicle is configured and supports NFC digital key function;
  - Relevant mobile phone or wearable device supports BYD NFC digital key function (please consult your BYD distributor and provider for specific supported device models).

**Enabling Phone NFC Digital Key**

You can enable Phone NFC Digital Key in the following ways. Before activating it, please enter the vehicle with the physical key, start the vehicle and keep it in "P" gear.

- BYD App:
  - Please go to the mobile APP store to download BYD APP, complete registration and login. Click "Digital key" and follow the prompts.

**Enabling the NFC Digital key with Wearable Device**

Wearable devices support Apple Watch (for other wearable devices, please consult the distributor and provider), it can be enabled in any of the following ways:

- Sync the iPhone to the Apple Watch after Successful Activation:
  - Activate the iPhone digital key after wearing the unlocked watch. After the iPhone is successfully activated, the prompts can be synchronized to nearby Apple Watch to add the digital key, and complete the activation steps accordingly.
- Watch APP activation:

- It applies to the case that the iPhone digital key is not synchronized to the Apple Watch when it is activated. Please open the Watch APP, select "Wallet", find the corresponding key, and click "Add" to complete activation steps accordingly.

**The Usage of NFC Digital Key**

When using, please turn on the NFC function of the device and use it according to the following prompts:

- Carrying a mobile phone/wearable device with an NFC digital key enabled, unlock/lock the vehicle by placing its NFC antenna area close to the NFC sign on the side mirror of the driver’ s side (for NFC antenna area, please consult your device provider).

**CAUTION**

- Start the vehicle as soon as possible after you have obtained the start permission using the NFC digital key. If the car is not started in time, put the mobile phone or wearable device in the NFC sign again to obtain the start permission.

**Delete the NFC Digital Key**

The digital key can be deleted in any of the following methods:

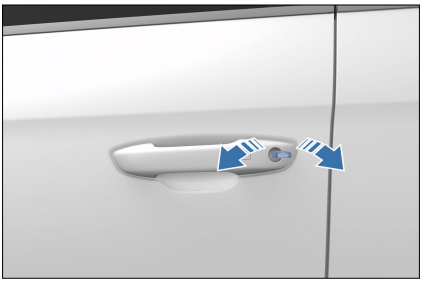
- Delete Digital Key in BYD App
  - Open BYD App to enter the digital key management page, click the digital key to be deleted, and enter the operation password to complete the deletion.
- Delete Digital Key in the Wallet:
  - Open the system wallet, find the digital key card that needs to be deleted, and complete the deletion according to the system prompts.

# Locking/Unlocking Doors

**Locking/Unlocking with Mechanical Key**

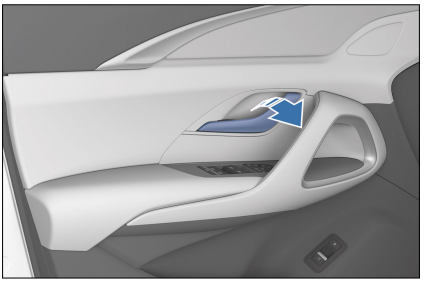
Insert the mechanical key into the keyhole and turn the key.

- Turn the key clockwise to unlock the driver's door.
- Turn the key counterclockwise to lock the driver's door.



**Opening with Interior Door Handle**

- When the vehicle is unlocked, pull the handle once to open the door from inside the vehicle.
- When the vehicle is locked, pull the handle twice to open the door from inside the vehicle.



**Locking/Unlocking/Finding the Vehicle with Smart Key**

- The wireless remote control function is used to unlock or lock all doors at a short range and realize additional functions.
- When carrying the registered smart key into the activation area, press the button on the key to lock or unlock all doors.

**Locking:**

- With the any gear position:
  - When all doors and hood are closed, press the lock button to lock all doors simultaneously. Ensure that all doors are locked securely.



  - If any door, the hood or tailgate is not closed, turn signals do not flash, and the horn sounds once.

**Unlocking:**

- Press the unlock button to unlock all doors simultaneously. The turn signals flash twice.
- When the smart key is used to unlock all doors simultaneously, even if the doors are not opened, if the "DOOR" switch is turned on, the interior light goes on for 15s and then goes out (the user can slide down the status bar on the top of the multimedia touchscreen to open the Quick interface and turn on or off the "DOOR" switch).
- When the anti-theft system is activated, open any door within 30s after unlocking with the smart key. Otherwise, all doors lock automatically.
- If the key is placed in the locked vehicle, and the tailgate is closed, the vehicle is unlocked actively, and the turn signals flash twice.

**Vehicle Locating**

- When the vehicle is in the anti-theft state, if the lock button is pressed, the vehicle makes a long sound, and the turn signals flash 15 times. When the vehicle cannot be found, this function can be used to locate it.
- When the vehicle is in the vehicle locating state, press the lock button again to activate the vehicle locating function again.

**Raising/Lowering Windows with Smart Key**

- With the vehicle powered off:
  - Long press the lock button of the smart key to roll up four windows.
  - Long press the unlock button of the intelligent key to roll down four windows.
- The user can turn on or off the above functions via multimedia touchscreen → Settings → Locks → Windows. By default, the rolling up function is turned on, and the rolling down function is turned off.

**WARNING**

- Before using the remote control window raising function, check that all occupants are not at risk of being caught or pinched.

**Locking/Unlocking with Microswitch**

**Locking:**

- With the any gear position:
  - When doors are closed but unlocked, carry the intelligent key and press the microswitch on the front door handle to lock all doors simultaneously.



  - If any door, hood or tailgate is not closed, the closed door can still be locked with the microswitch, but the turn signals do not flash, and the horn sounds once.

**Unlocking:**

- In the anti-theft state, when carrying the smart key into the activation area, press the microswitch on the front door handle to unlock all doors simultaneously. Turn signals flash twice.
- In the anti-theft state, please open the doors within 30s after using the unlocking function. Otherwise, all doors are locked automatically again.
- Pressing the microswitch does not unlock/lock doors in the following cases:
  - Press the microswitch while opening or closing the door.
  - The key is in the vehicle.

**REMINDER**

- If the smart key is too close to an exterior door handle or window, it may not be possible to activate the entry function.

**Raising/Lowering Windows with Microswitch**

With the vehicle powered off, carry an effective smart key and press and hold the microswitch to realize automatic rolling up/down of four windows. Turn on or off the functions via multimedia touchscreen → Settings → Locks → Windows. By default, the rolling up function is turned on, and the rolling down function is turned off.

**Locking/Unlocking with NFC Key**

**Locking:**

With the vehicle powered off and all doors closed but not locked, place the phone enabled NFC function* in sensing area close to the NFC mark on the driver’ s side mirror. All doors are simultaneously locked. The turn signals flash once.

**Unlocking:**

- When the anti-theft system is activated, place the phone enabled NFC function* in sensing area close to the NFC mark on the driver's side mirror. All doors are simultaneously unlocked. The turn signals flash twice.
- In the anti-theft state, please open the door within 30 seconds after unlocking with the mobile phone * with NFC key. Otherwise, all doors are locked automatically again.
- After the unlocking, user activation permission is provided for 4 minutes

and is revoked when the ignition is switched off.

- Under the following circumstances, the vehicle will not be unlocked/locked when phone enabled NFC function* is close to the NFC mark area on the driver's side mirror:
  - When opening or closing the door, close to the command area on the driver's side mirror.

**CAUTION**

- The keyless start permission lasts for up to 4 minutes.

### Locking/Unlocking the Tailgate

#### Opening/Closing Tailgate with Smart Key*

- Double press the tailgate open button on the smart key to open the tailgate. Turn signals flash twice. Press this button again to stop opening. Then double press it to close the tailgate.

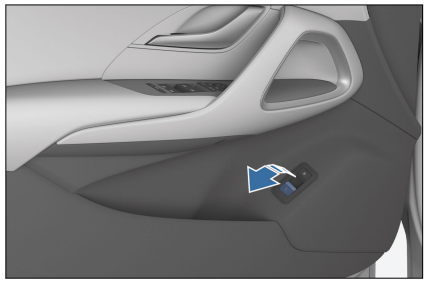


**REMINDER**

- When the tailgate is opened or closed, press the tailgate open button again, and the tailgate stops the current action.

#### Opening/Closing tailgate from inside the Vehicle*

- When the tailgate is closed, pull the switch once, and the back door will be unlocked and opened to the set position (default maximum height).
- When the tailgate is opened, pull the switch again, and the back door will stop at the current position immediately and stably.



- When the tailgate is in the open state, pull the switch for more than 1s, the tailgate will automatically close, and stop closing immediately after releasing.

#### Opening the tailgate with external button

- When the vehicle is unlocked, press the switch outside the tailgate to open it.
- When the whole vehicle is locked, carry the valid smart key of the vehicle, press the outside switch of the tailgate, and the lid can be opened.



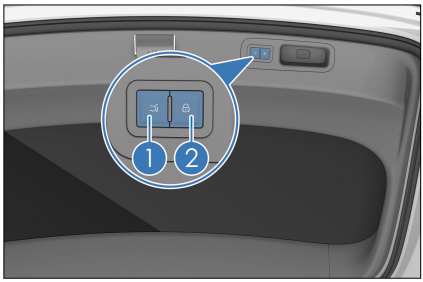
**REMINDER**

- If the switch is pressed again while the tailgate is in motion, it will stop at its current position. If the button is then pressed again, this lid moves in the opposite direction.

**Electrically close the tailgate***

① Tailgate close button*

- When the tailgate is open and stationary, press the tailgate close button to close it.
- Press the tailgate close button a second time to stop the tailgate at the current position. If the button is then pressed again, this tailgate will move in the opposite direction.




② Vehicle lock button*

- When the vehicle is powered off and the boot lid is opened, carry an effective smart key and press the locking button to close the boot lid, lock the vehicle and enter the anti-theft state.

**Manually close the tailgate***

- When the vehicle is unlocked, the tailgate can be closed manually.

**Opening/Closing tailgate with BYD assistant***

- After users wake up the intelligent voice system, users can control the opening and closing of the tailgate through the "intelligent voice assistant".

**CAUTION**

- Before closing the trunk electronically, make sure doors, and windows are properly closed.

**Setting tailgate opening height**

- Manually or automatically open the boot lid at the desired position and keep it there; press and hold the interior boot lid button for more than 3s. After the speaker sounds for 1s, the current tailgate height is set successfully.
- Adjust the trunk open height via multimedia touchscreen → Settings → Locks → Doors.

**Anti-pinch function**

- The electrical tailgate can automatically open when obstructed by external force during closing. It stops moving when obstructed by external force during opening.

**When the tailgate fails to act automatically**

- Manually and completely close the tailgate for recovery.

**When reconnecting the low-voltage battery**

- Manually close the tailgate to ensure the electrical tailgate functions normally.

**WARNING**

- In order to prevent serious injury, make sure to observe the following precautions:

**WARNING**

- Never try to deliberately activate the anti-pinch function.
- Make sure to alert people nearby of the tailgate motion.
- Make sure hands and fingers are clear from the tailgate area when it is closing.
- When opening or closing the tailgate, make sure the surrounding area is safe.
- Before driving make sure the tailgate is properly closed.
- Make sure to remove any ice or snow from the area before opening the tailgate. Otherwise the tailgate may close again.
- Do not manually interfere in tailgate motion when it is opening or closing.
- Be mindful of windy conditions when opening or closing the tailgate.
- The anti-pinch function may fail to work if an object is caught right before the tailgate is fully closed.
- The tailgate may start closing before fully opening. Opening or closing the trunk on slopes is more difficult than on level ground. Be mindful of the possibility of the tailgate to move on its own in such conditions. Before loading or unloading the trunk, make sure the tailgate is fully open and secure.
- The anti-pinch function may fail depending on object shape. Be careful not to get your fingers or anything else caught.

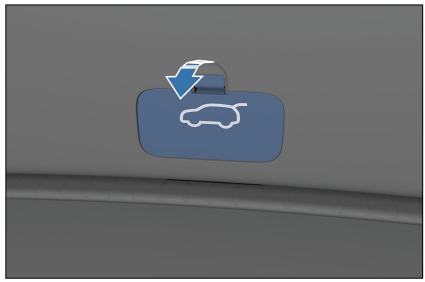
**WARNING**

careful not to get your fingers or anything else caught.

**Emergency Tailgate Releasing from the Inside**

Emergency unlocking of the tailgate can be achieved through the following steps:

1. Pull up the fold-and-unlock pull strap on the rear seat, fold the rear seat back, and enter the trunk.
2. Find the emergency unlocking cover right above the latch of the tailgate and open the cover.
3. Pull the emergency unlocking zipper in the cover plate, and the tailgate can be opened in the vehicle after hearing the unlocking sound.



**REMINDER**

- When the vehicle is powered off, the tailgate can be unlocked from the inside in case of emergency.

**Locking/Unlocking with Central Locking**

**Locking or unlocking the vehicle with the central locking**

Refer to "Driver's Door Switch Group" ***P82*** in this chapter.

**Locking or Unlocking Doors Automatically**

- All doors are automatically locked when the vehicle speed exceeds 8 km/h.
- When the START/STOP button is pressed and the power is switched from "ON" to "OFF", all doors are unlocked automatically.

**Locking and Unlocking All Doors Simultaneously**

- When the vehicle is not in the anti-theft mode, the indicator of the central door lock button turns on after the vehicle is locked, and turns offt if the vehicle is unlocked.
- Press the lock button of the central door lock to lock all doors simultaneously. At this time, the door cannot be opened from the outside.To open the door, pull the inner handle once to unlock the door, and then pull it again to open the door.

**REMINDER**

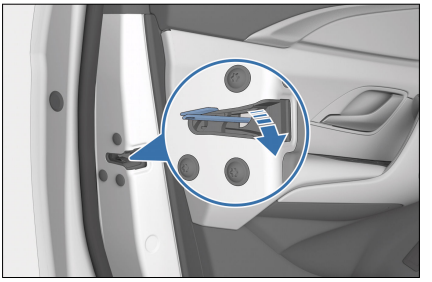
- All doors unlock automatically when the vehicle suffers a strong impact, depending on the impact intensity and accident type.

**Emergency Vehicle Locking with Mechanical Key**

When the central lock system or smart key fails, the mechanical key can be used for emergency locking or unlocking.

**Locking:**

1. Take out the mechanical key from the smart key.
2. Open the other three doors except the driver's door, and push the white slider downward for these three doors respectively with the mechanical key teeth in the direction of the arrow, as shown in the figure, to close and lock the door.



3. After locking the other three doors except the driver's door, open the driver's door, lift and hold the door handle, and pull it to the maximum opening angle.
4. Insert the mechanical key into the door lock hole, apply a certain force to rotate the key anticlockwise to the maximum angle, and then reset the key to the initial position and pull it out (refer to ***P58***).
5. Release the door handle and check whether all doors are locked.

**Unlocking:**

1. Take out the mechanical key from the smart key.
2. Lift and hold the door handle and pull it to the maximum opening angle.
3. Insert the mechanical key into the door lock hole, apply a certain force to rotate the key clockwise to the maximum angle, and then reset the key to the initial position and pull it out.
4. Release the door handle, and pull it again to open the driver's door.
5. After entering the vehicle, operate the inner handle twice to unlock the other three doors except the driver's door.

**REMINDER**

- Prevent excessive force from distorting or breaking the key during the operation.

## Smart Access and Start System

Use the smart key to unlock or lock the vehicle doors.

### Entry Function

Use the smart key to unlock or lock the vehicle doors. (For details, please refer to ***P59*** and ***P60***).

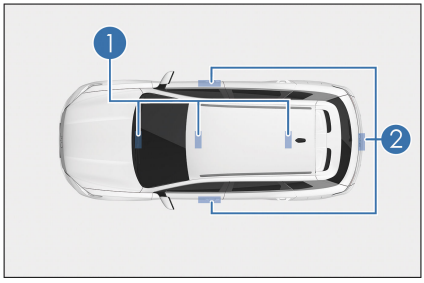
### Start-up Function

With the smart key inside, press the brake pedal and the START/STOP button to start the vehicle. (Refer to ***P123***.)

### Antenna Position

① Interior detection antenna

② Exterior detection antenna



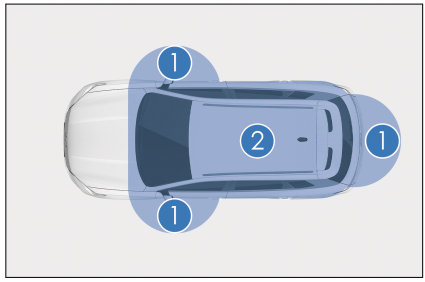

### Active Area

The smart access and start functions take effect only when the registered smart key is within the active area.

① The entry function activation area is about 1 m away from the door handles on both sides and the external tailgate release button.

② Start function activation area is in the compartment.

If the smart key of the vehicle is near the smart keys of other vehicles, it may take a bit longer than usual to unlock the doors, which is normal.




**REMINDER**

The smart access and start system may not work properly when:

- There is a strong electromagnetic field nearby, such as TV towers, power stations, and broadcasting stations.
- The smart key is being carried along with a communication device, such as a two-way radio or mobile phone.
- The smart key is in contact with or covered by a metal object.
- The door handle is operated too quickly.
- The smart key is too close to the handle.
- Another wireless remote control function is being used nearby.
- When smart key battery is exhausted.

**REMINDER**

- The smart key is close to high voltage equipment or equipment that produces noise.
- The smart key is being carried along with another smart key or radio-wave-emitting device.
- Even in the activation area, the smart key may not work normally in some positions (e.g., on the dashboard, in the glove box, or on the floor).

- If the smart access system is not working properly and it is impossible to enter the vehicle, the mechanical key can be used to lock/unlock the driver's door, or the wireless remote control function can be used to lock/unlock all doors.
- Possible causes for the failure of the normal start function when the "START/STOP" button is pressed:
  - If the smart key does not work, the smart key warning light on the instrument cluster goes on, and the information display screen on the instrument cluster displays a prompt about the low SOC of the key battery, the battery SOC of the key may have run out.
  - Start the engine repeatedly in a short time. Wait for 10s before starting the vehicle.
- If the smart access and start system cannot work properly due to system failures, bring all smart keys to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for repair.

**Saving Battery SOC**

- Communication between the key and the vehicle occurs even when the vehicle is parked. Therefore, do not leave the key in the vehicle or within 2 m from the vehicle.
- If the smart key receives strong electromagnetic waves for a long time, the battery runs out rapidly. The smart key must be kept at least 1 m away from the following equipment:
  - TV set
  - Personal computer
  - Wireless phone charger
  - Light stand
  - Fluorescent light

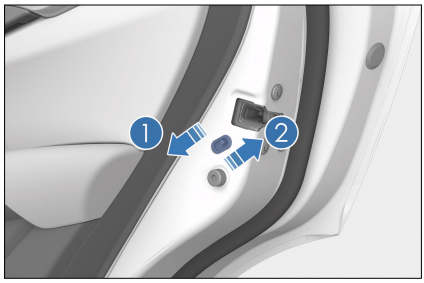
## Child Protection Lock

Child protection locks are designed to prevent children in rear seats from accidentally opening rear doors. Such locks are provided on the sides of the left and right rear doors.

The door cannot be opened from inside the vehicle while the latch is locked. To open this door, use the exterior handle.

① Locking

② Unlocking




**CAUTION**

- Before driving, especially when a child is in the vehicle, ensure that the doors are closed and the

**CAUTION**

child protection lock function is enabled.

- Proper use of seat belts and activation of child protection lock helps prevent the driver and passengers from being thrown out of the vehicle in an accident, and also prevents a door from being opened accidentally.

# Seat

## Seat Precautions

- Adjust the driver's seat so that the pedal, steering wheel and dashboard controller are easy to control for the driver.
- During driving, the most effective protective measure is to keep the seat backrest upright, always lean on the backrest and adjust the seat belt to a proper position.
- Do not fold in the rear seats during driving.
- Secure the baggage properly to prevent it from sliding or moving. Do not place baggage higher than the seat backrest.

**WARNING**

- Do not sit on the upper part of the folded seat backrest or on the goods. Otherwise, people may be seriously injured due to improper sitting on the seat or improper fastening of the seat belt in case of emergency braking or collision.
- Do not place objects under the seat to avoid affecting

**WARNING**

the seat locking mechanism or accidentally pushing the seat position adjustment lever upward, resulting in sudden movement of the seat and loss of control of the vehicle by the driver.

- When adjusting the seat, do not put your hands under the seat or near the operating parts to avoid injuries.
- After adjusting the seat backrest, lean back to confirm that it is locked. If not fully locked, personal injury may be caused in case of an accident or sudden braking.
- Do not lay down the seat backrest when the vehicle is moving. As the upper shoulder strap of the seat belt cannot be properly attached to the body, in case of an accident, the driver and passengers may hit the shoulder strap, causing serious injuries to the neck or other parts, or slide out of the lap portion, causing serious injuries.
- During driving, no one is allowed to sit in the boot area or on the folded seat. Using these areas without proper protective measures may cause serious injuries in case of an accident or sudden braking.
- Never adjust the seat while driving, to avoid losing control of the vehicle.
- Do not drive the vehicle until the passengers are properly seated.
- Before laying the rear seats down, check the positions of the rear

**WARNING**

headrests and the front seats, to avoid interference among the rear seats, the front seats and central passage.

**REMINDER**

- When folding in the rear seats, be careful not to damage the seat belt, and check whether the buckle is correctly placed in the buckle slot on the seat cushion.
- Do not fasten the seat belt before adjusting the seat.
- When adjusting the seat, be careful not to let the seat hit passengers or baggage.
- During the measurement of seat cushion depth, the front and rear positions of the seat are the rearmost positions of the slide rail, and the design angle of the backrest is 25°.
- During the measurement of seat cushion width, adjust the backrest angle to the designed state (the backrest angle of the second row seats is 28°), and adjust the seat slide rail* to the rearmost position. For the separable and combinable seats in the same row, measure the cushion width as a whole row of seats.

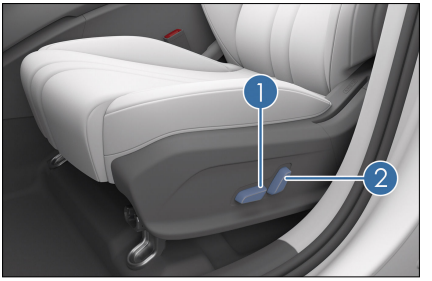
## Adjusting Front Seats

### Electrical Front Seat Adjustment

Electrical front seat adjustment includes the adjustment of front and rear distance, seat cushion height*, and backrest angle. There are the following adjustment methods according to the functions equipped with the actual vehicle.

① Seat Position Adjustment Switch

- Move this switch forward or backward to slide the seat forward or backward.
- Pull up or push down the back end of this switch to adjust seat cushion height.*




② Seatback Angle Adjustment Switch

- Move the seatback angle adjustment switch back or forth to adjust the seatback angle.

**REMINDER**

- Releasing the switch stops the seat in this position. Do not place anything under the seat as this may prevent the seat from operating.

### Seat Heating System*

- The user can slide down the status bar on the top of the touchscreen to open the Quick interface and turn on or off the seat heating systems.
- Users can enter the seat function interface adjustment through the multimedia air conditioning operation interface.
- Users can turn on or off the seat heating system by voice, saying "turn

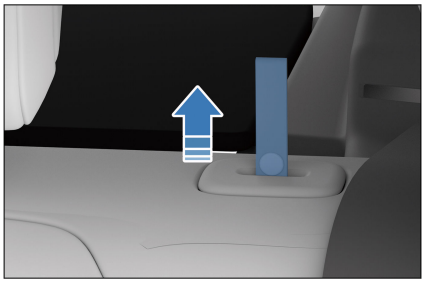
on the driver seat heating" or "turn off the driver seat heating".

**Heating System Adjustment**

- The heating adjustment gear is a non-cycle gear. There are four gear buttons: "Close", "First Gear", "Second Gear" and "Third Gear". The corresponding modules of the corresponding gear seats are reflected by different color depths.

## Folding Rear Seats

Pull up the fold-and-unlock handle on the seat backrest to fold the rear seat backrest.

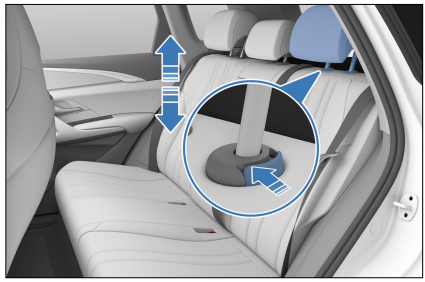


**CAUTION**

- Please fold or unfold the rear seats at a moderate speed. Avoid quickly lowering or pulling up seatbacks to prevent damages to or malfunction of rear seats and the seat belts.
- When the rear seats are folded or recovered, please ensure that the left and right safety belts are exposed, so as to prevent the safety belts from being clighted between the rear seats and the side wings and damaging the seats and safety belts.

## Adjusting Rear-Seat Head Supports

- Lifting a head support
  - Pull up the headrest to the desired position in the direction of the headrest rod, and release it after hearing a "click".
- Lowering a head support
  - Press and hold the height adjustment button to lower the head support to a proper position, and then release this button.



- Removing a head support
  - Press and hold the head support height adjustment button to pull out the head support, and then release this button.
- Installing a head support
  - Insert the head support links into the bushing with the groove facing forward. Press and hold the height adjustment button to lower the head support to a proper position, and then release this button.

**REMINDER**

- Head support protect vehicle occupants from head and neck injuries. Adjust the head support so that its center aligns with the back of your head for

**REMINDER**

maximum protection. Adjust the head support to the proper position based on your actual height.

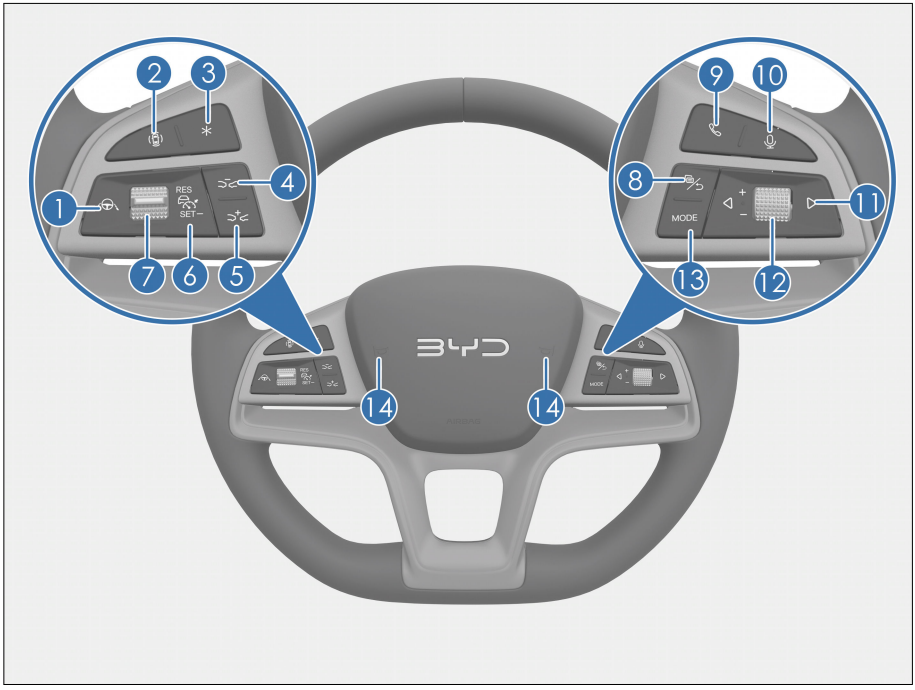
- When adjusting head support height, align the occupant's ear tip line with the center line of the head support.
- After adjusting the head support, ensure that it is locked into position.
- Do not drive the vehicle without head supports.

**REMINDER**

- Do not attach any object to the head support lever.

# Steering Wheel

## Steering Wheel Switches




| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | Intelligent Cruise Control (ICC) button | 8 | Instrument cluster/Back button |
| 2 | AVM button* | 9 | Call button |

3 Customize button

4 Distance -

5 Distance +

6 ACC button

7 Lever

10 Voice recognition button

11 Left/Right button

12 Scroll button

13 MODE button

14 Horn pad

**Left buttons**

**Intelligent Cruise Control (ICC) button**

- Tap this button to turn on/off the ICC system (to activate this function, activate the ACC function first).

**AVM button***

- Turns panoramic view off if already in panoramic view mode, or on if not in panoramic view mode.

**Customize button**

- Long press to enter the custom key setting interface to select the custom function; short press to execute the current custom function.

**Distance -**

- Adjust the following distance to the vehicle ahead in the ACC following function and decrease one level.

**Distance +**

- Adjust the distance from the vehicle ahead in the ACC following function and increase one level.

**Lever**

- Under the cruise mode, pull up the lever and press this button to increase at a certain speed; Press and hold it to continuously increase the speed.
- Under the cruise mode, pull down the lever and press this button to decrease at a certain speed; Press and hold it to continuously decrease the speed.

**ACC button**

- Activate or deactivate the adaptive cruise function.

**REMINDER**

- For instructions on using cruise control, see ***P141***.

**Right button**

**Instrument Cluster Menu/Return Button**

- When the instrument cluster is not in menu mode, press this buttonto display the menu on the instrument cluster.
- When the instrument cluster is in menu mode, press this button to return to the upper-level screen, or to exit the menu if there is no upper-level screen.
- On the Bluetooth call screen, press it to end the call.

**Call button**

- Press to make/receive a call. (The multimedia system is muted after pressing this button.)
- When the system is in a Bluetooth unrelated interface and Bluetooth is not paired, press this button for the system to skip to the Bluetooth Connected interface. If Bluetooth is connected, press this button for the system to skip to the main dialing interface.
- When a number is input in the dialing interface, or an entry from the Call

History or Contacts is selected, press this button to start dialing.

- While under the main dialing interface with Bluetooth connected and no number input, press this button for the system to directly skip to the Outgoing Calls interface under the Call History interface. Press it again for the system to automatically call the first entry in the Outgoing Calls interface.

**Voice recognition button**

- Press this button to switch the multimedia touchscreen to the voice recognition interface and realize the voice function.

**Left/Right button**

Multimedia system

- In radio mode:
  - Press ◁ to play the previous radio station.
  - Press ▷ to play the next radio station.
- In USB/Bluetooth music/third-party music APP and other modes:
  - Press ◁ to play the previous track (track number -1).
  - Press ◁ to select the previous entry in the Bluetooth Call History and Contacts interfaces.
  - Press ▷ to play the next track (track number +1).
  - Press ▷ to select the next entry in the Bluetooth Call History and Contacts interfaces.

Instrument cluster

- In instrument cluster menu mode:
  - Press ◁ to switch it to a left menu and its submenus.
  - Press ▷ to switch it to a right menu and its submenus.
- Set the charging reservation time:
  - Press the ◁ / ▷ button to choose hour or minute.

**Scroll Button**

Multimedia system

- Roll up the roller: increase the volume in a single step until the maximum volume (12 gears in a circle).
- Roll down the roller: decrease the volume in a single step until the minimum volume (12 gears in a circle).
- Press the roller downward: mute function.

Instrument cluster

- Roll up the roller:
  - Select the secondary/tertiary menu items upward in the instrument cluster menu mode.
- Roll down the roller:
  - Select the secondary/tertiary menu items downward in the instrument cluster menu mode.
- Press the roller:
  - In the instrument cluster menu mode, go to the next menu item for the current option or confirm the current setting.

**MODE button**

- Mode selection: press the mode button to switch between media applications, peripheral applications and pre-installed third-party audio and video applications.

**Horn pad**

**Horn pad**

- Press the pad to sound the horn.

**CAUTION**

- Do not press the pad for a long time, or the horn can be easily damaged.

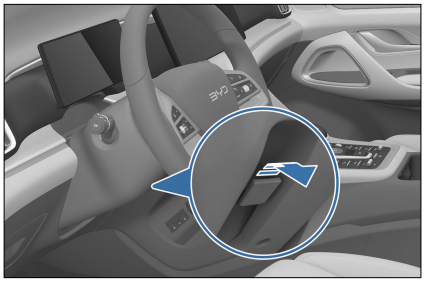
**REMINDER**

- Please observe traffic regulations and use the horn reasonably.

## Adjusting the Steering Wheel

### Adjusting the Steering Wheel Manually

- To adjust the steering wheel position, hold it and operate as follows:
  - Press the steering wheel adjustment handle, move the steering wheel to the desired angle, or adjust it to the desired axial position, and restore the handle to the locked position.



**WARNING**

- Never adjust the steering wheel while driving, as this is under risk of impaired vehicle control, which can lead to accidents.

**WARNING**

- After adjusting the steering wheel, move it up and down to verify that it is securely locked.

### Power-Assisted Steering Mode Settings

- The hand feeling of steering assist differs among people, and different users have different evaluations and demands on the feeling.
- The user can set Power-Assisted Steering Mode through the multimedia touchscreen → Settings ⚙ → Vehicle → Driving Control. The Power-Assisted Steering Mode includes Comfort and Sport modes.

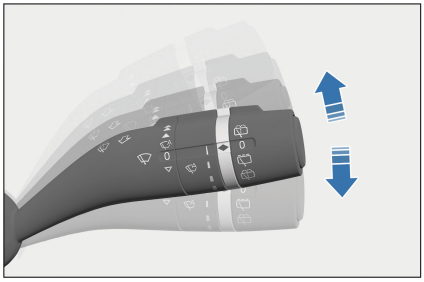
**REMINDER**

- Setting the power steering to sport mode is suggested if the steering wheel feels light when the vehicle is running at a high speed.

# Wipers

## Wiper Switch

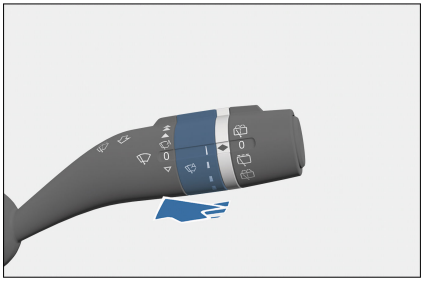
- This lever is used to control the windshield wipers and washers. This lever can be moved to five levels:
  - ▲▲ : High-speed wiper mode
  - ▲ : LO level
  - Automatic wiper
  - 0 : Stop
  - ▽ : MIST level



- To select the level, move the lever upward or downward.
- At low- and high- speed modes, the wiper operates continuously.
- To let wipers work in the spot-wiping mode ▽ , pull the lever from the 0 position. In this mode, the front windshield wipers operate at a low speed until the lever is released.

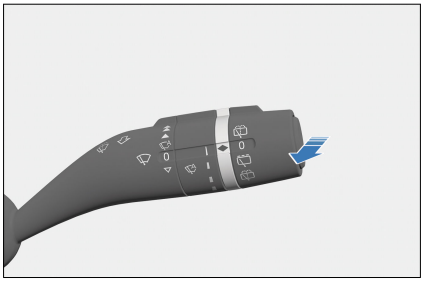
**Automatic wiper**

- The rain sensor automatically controls the operation mode of wipers based on the rainfall, and it is located in front of the interior rearview mirror on the front windshield inside the vehicle.
- To activate/disactivate the wiper intermittent mode, turn the switch to the automatic wiper mode, and disable the automatic wiper function with the "Auto Wiper" button via multimedia touchscreen→ Settings ⚙ →Vehicle → Driving Control.
- The automatic wiper function has four sensitivity levels. The higher the lever, the higher the sensitivity. When using the automatic wiper function, change the sensitivity by adjusting the toggle based on real-time rain conditions. If the wiper reacts to rain too quickly, reduce the sensitivity; if the wiper reacts to rain too slowly, increase the sensitivity.



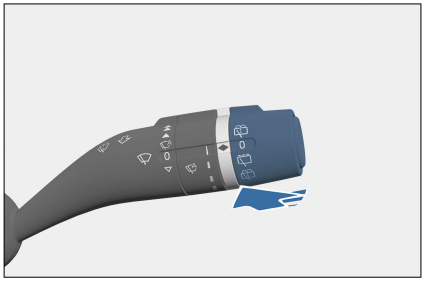
**Front Windshield Wipers and Washer**

- To clean the front windshield, please pull the wiper lever backward (towards the steering wheel). In this case, the washer sprays water all the time, and the wiper works simultaneously.
- The front windshield wiper wipes once after the current wiping if the wiper lever is held for less than 1s, When the control switch is toggled for more than 1s, the wiper wipes twice.

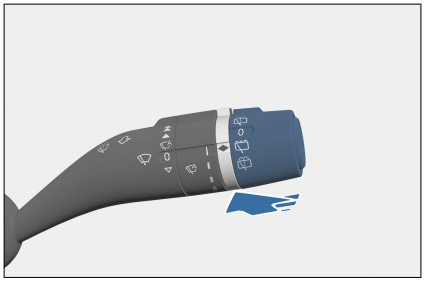


**Front Windshield Wipers and Washer**

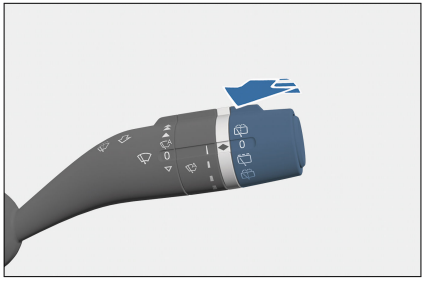
- Turn the knob at the end of the wiper switch to the position to start the rear windshield wiper; turn the knob to the 0 position to stop the wiper.



- Rotate this knob to to simultaneously activate the rear windshield wiper and washer.



- Rotate this knob to and release. After spraying the washer fluid, the wipers will operate 2 more times.



**REMINDER**

- Check the wiper blade regularly to remove the dirt on it.
- If the wiper is turned on as soon as it rains, rainwater mixing with sand and dust will not clean the windshield, but cause a blurred vision in an instant, affecting driving safety.
- Use cleaning agent for glass. The use of water or other types of detergent may cause damage to the washer motor.
- If the tailgate is opened or not fully closed, the wiper switch fails to control the rear wiper. After the tailgate is closed, the rear wiper function returns to normal.

## Replacing Wiper Blades

Check the condition of the front and rear wiper blades at least once every six months for cracks or local hardening of the rubber. If any of these are found, the wiper blades should be replaced.

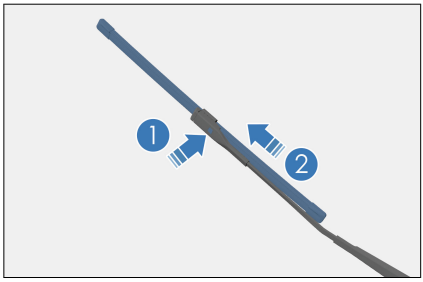
### Replacing Wiper Blades

When the power supply of the whole vehicle is in "ON" or "OK" gear, the user can active the front wiper maintenance function through the multimedia touchscreen → Settings → Vehicle Health → Overhaul, and open the corresponding wiper maintenance setting, then the wiper will rotate out, which is convenient for maintenance and replacement of the wiper.

### Replacing Front Wiper Blade

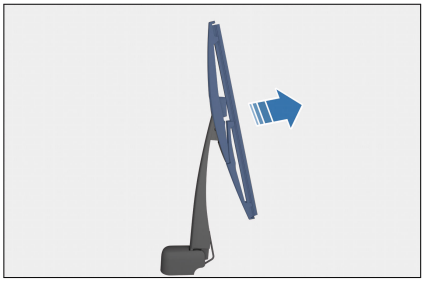
1. Pull up the wiper arm at the driver side, and then pull up the other at the passenger side.
2. Press the wiper blade lock button ①.
3. Hold the wiper blade clip and take out the wiper blade in the direction shown in the figure.

4. When assembling a new wiper blade, operate in the reverse order of removal.




**Replacing Rear Wiper Blade**

1. Lift the rear wiper arm from the rear windshield.
2. Turn the rear wiper blade to the position shown in the figure.
3. The wiper blade can be taken out directly by rotation.



**CAUTION**

- Do not open the hood when the wiper arms are pulled up.
- Lower the wipers slowly, avoiding direct impact onto the windshield.
- Do not bend the wiper blade, and do not obstruct the wiper blade when the wiper is in operation.
- In rainy and snowy days in winter, it is recommended to enter the multimedia vehicle health setting interface to open the front wiper maintenance, and then lift the front wiper manually to avoid the wiper being frozen.

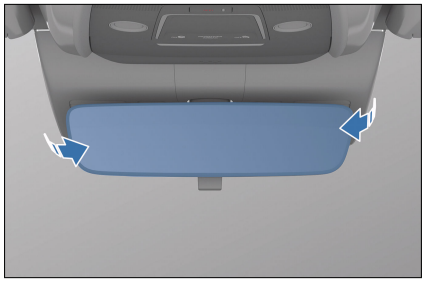
For wiper maintenance, see ***P234***.

# Rearview Mirror

## Interior Rearview Mirror

**Adjusting the Interior Rearview Mirror Manually**

Move the interior rearview mirror up or down, left or right to a suitable position.



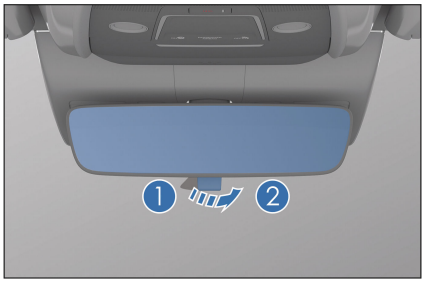
**WARNING**

- Adjusting the interior rearview mirror before driving. Do not adjust the interior rearview mirror while driving. This may distract your attention, causing accidents.
- Do not hang heavy objects on the interior rearview mirror, or shake or pull it vigorously.
- When the interior rearview mirror gets stuck, do not adjust it violently by hand, as this may cause it to fall off.

**Manual Anti-glare Interior Rearview Mirror**

The manual anti-glare interior rearview mirror is designed with the normal mode and anti-glare mode:

- Normal mode: rotate the control lever to ① to get the clearest mirror image.

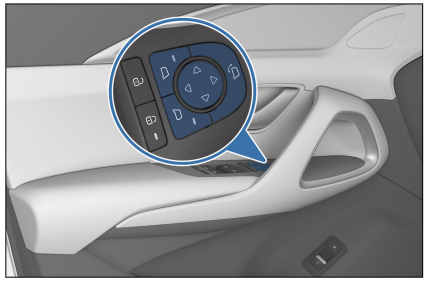



- Anti-glare mode: rotate the control lever to ②, where the interference from headlights behind can be effectively reduced at night. Remember that rear view image clarity decreases when glare is reduced.

## Side Mirrors

Through the side mirror switch, the side mirror can be adjusted to the appropriate angle, so that the driver can just see both sides of the vehicle in the rearview mirror.

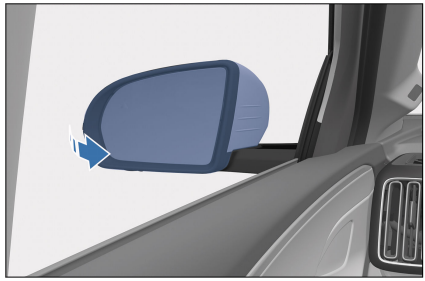
- Selection switch: Selection switches: used to select the side mirror to be adjusted.
  - : Left side mirror button
  - : Right side mirror button
- Adjustment button : After selecting the exterior rearview mirror to be adjusted, press this button again to adjust the lens of the exterior rearview mirror to the appropriate position.



**Folding Side Mirrors**

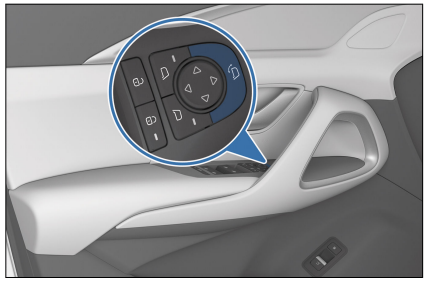
Folding side mirrors manually*

- Press the outer edge of the side mirror hard to rotate the mirror body around the folding shaft to the locking position.



Electric Folding Side Mirrors*

- Folding button : Press this button to fold in the left and right side mirrors simultaneously, and press it again to unfold them.



- When the anti-theft function is activated, the two side mirrors

fold automatically.When the anti-theft function is released, they unfold automatically.

- The user can enable and disable the Auto-fold of side mirror through the multimedia touchscreen → Settings → Vehicle → Comfort Driving.

**WARNING**

- Adjusting side mirrors before driving. Do not adjust the side mirrors while driving. This may distract your attention, causing accidents.

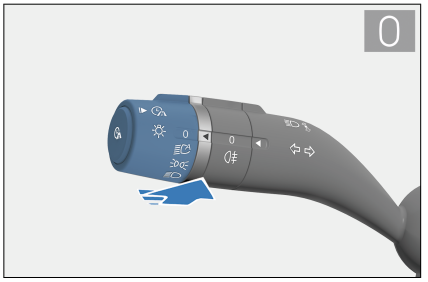
**REMINDER**

- If side mirrors are frozen, use a jet deicer to clean the mirror surfaces instead of operating the controller or scraping their surfaces.

# Switches

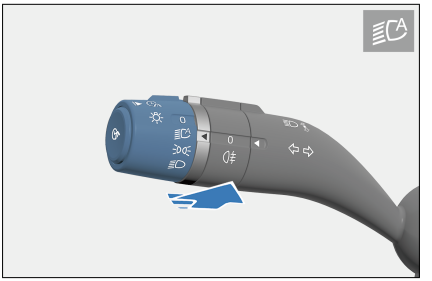
## Light Switches

Rotate the knob at the end of the light switch to 0 to turn off all lights (except for daytime running lights).



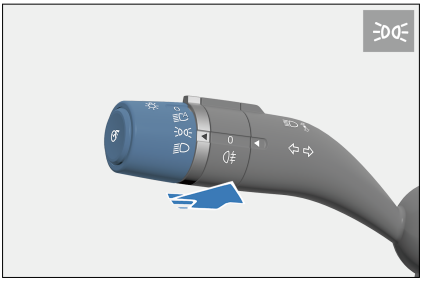
**Auto Lights**

Turn this knob to " ". BCM collects the brightness value acquired by the light intensity sensor and automatically turns on/off position lights and low beams.



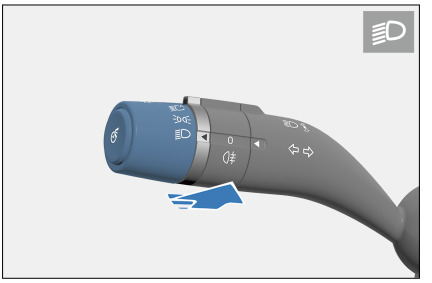
**Clearance Light**

Turn this knob to to turn on position lights.



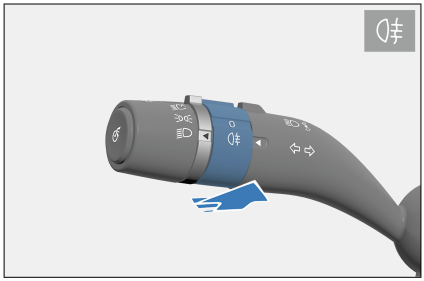
**Low Beam**

Rotate this knob to to turn on the low beams.



**Rear Fog Light**

Rotate this knob to and rotate the fog light knob to to turn on the rear fog lights.



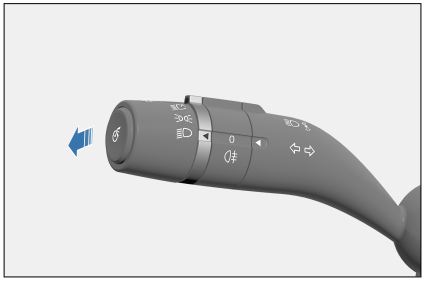
**Overtaking Light**

Pull up the lever (toward the steering wheel) to turn on the overtaking light. Release the lever for the light switch to automatically reset. The overtaking light turns off.



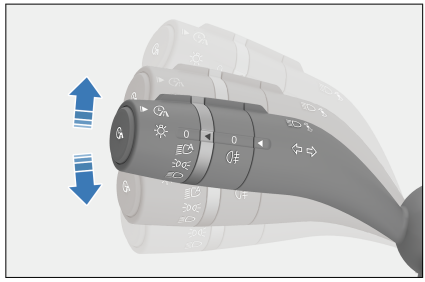
**High Beam**

Set the light switch to and push the light switch lever down (away from the steering wheel) to turn on the high beam.



**Turn Signal**

- Push up the light handle to signal right turn.The right turn signal and its indicator on the instrument cluster flash.
- Push down the light switch lever, and then the left turn signals and the turn signal indicator on the instrument cluster start flashing simultaneously.
- After turn signals are turned on, they flash continuously even if the light switch is released. Turn signals go out automatically after the vehicle finishes turning the corner. Because of different driving habits for drivers, the light switch needs to be rotated for a round to reset in some extreme cases.



**Auto Off**

- Conditions for enabling the auto off function: this function is enabled when the light switch is rotated to the or , and the power supply is switched from "Start" to "Stop".
- With the auto off function activated, if the driver's door is closed, this function automatically turns off headlights and position lights after 10 s.
- With the auto off function activated, if the driver's door is opened, this function automatically turns off headlights and position lights after 10 min.

- After auto off, if the light mode changes, lights will be turned on according to the new state. If the conditions for enabling the auto off function are met after that, the auto off function will be activated again.
- Disabling the auto off function: After the vehicle is powered on, the auto off function is disabled, and the light knob can be operated normally.
- The auto off function turns off the lights. If the anti-theft state is activated and then deactivated, the lights turned off before are automatically turned on again. If the driver's door is not opened, this function turns off the lights again after 10 s. If the door is opened, the auto off function turns off the lights after 10 min.

**Follow me home function**

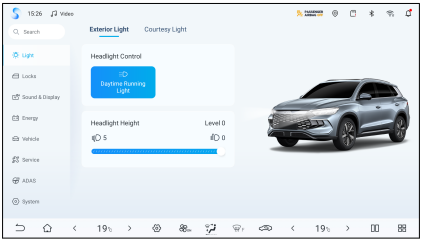
- Follow me home:
  - "Headlights before Enter" via Multimedia touchscreen→ Settings → Courtesy Light to set the time. The default time is 10s. When the light switch is rotated to the , or position, and when the user powers off to the "OFF" position and tries to leave the vehicle by locking the four doors, the corresponding lights will continue to illuminate for 10 seconds (or the time you set) to provide lighting sources.
- Follow me home:
  - The user can go to the "Headlights after Exit" via multimedia touchscreen→ Settings → Courtesy Light to set the time. The default time is 10s. When the light switch is rotated to the , or position, and the owner unlocks the vehicle and tries to get close to it, the corresponding lights continue to light up for 10s (or a set time) to provide the lighting source.

**CAUTION**

- The lighting time can be changed through the multimedia touchscreen interface.

**Headlight Height Adjustment**

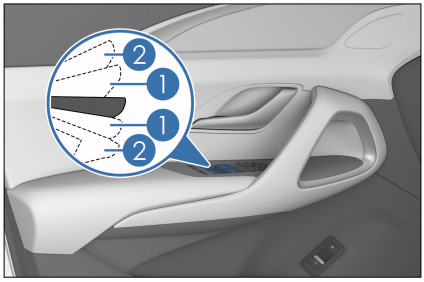
The user can adjust the Headlight Height in the up and down direction via multimedia touchscreen→ Settings → Light → Exterior Light. After the low beam is turned on, this switch works.




# Driver's Side Door Switch Assembly

**Electric window switch**

- With the vehicle powered OK, the window control switch on each side can be used to control the window regulation.
  - Door glass down-press the window control switch.
  - Door glass up-pull up the window control switch.




**Manual Rolling**

- Press down the window control switch to the ① gear position and hold it, the window descends, and release the rear window to stop working; pull up the window control switch to the ① gear position and hold it, the window ascends, and release the rear window to stop working.

**Automatic Lifting**

- Press down the window control switch button to the ② gear position and release it, the window will automatically descend; pull up the window control switch button to the ② gear position and release it, the window will automatically ascend. In the process of ascending and descending, operate the window switch button in any direction to stop lifting the window.

**Anti-pinch Function**

- When the window is obstructed by a person or an object while rolling up, it stops and rolls down to allow for the obstruction to be removed.

**Failure of window dynamic lifting function or anti-pinch function**

- If the window automatically rises and the anti-pinch function fails, the following methods can be taken to restore this function.
  - Pull up the window switch to raise the window glass to the top position and hold it there for about two seconds, and then press to lower the window glass to the bottom and hold it there for about two seconds. The automatic up and anti-pinch functions can be recovered.

**Delay Function**

- After power off, if the front door is not opened, the four-door window control switch has a 10-minute lifting function delay and can continue to operate the window lifting. During this period, if the front door is opened and the delay function is cancelled, the four-door window control can no longer operate the window up and down.

**WARNING**

- Never try to deliberately activate the anti-pinch function.
- In order to prevent serious injury, make sure to observe the following precautions:
  - Before operating the power windows, ensure that all passengers do not have any body parts that can be caught in the window.
  - Do not allow a child to operate the power windows.

**CAUTION**

- The anti-pinch function may not work if an object is jammed into the window when it is almost completely closed.
- Contacting a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for maintenance is recommended if the windows' automatic closing function or anti-pinch function is not working normally.

**Central Control Door Lock Switch**

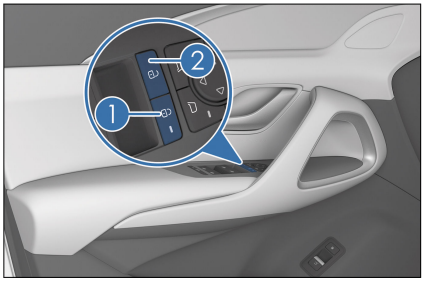
The front left door is equipped with buttons for locking and unlocking all doors.

① Locking

Press the central lock button. All doors are locked and the red lock indicator lights up.

② Unlocking

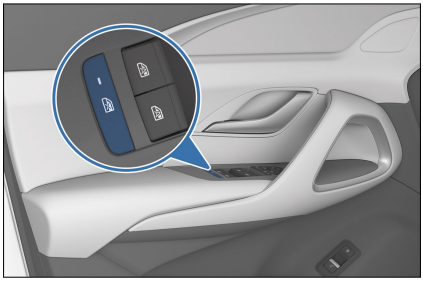
Press the central unlock button to unlock all doors. Once doors are unlocked, the button indicator goes off.




**Window Lock Button**

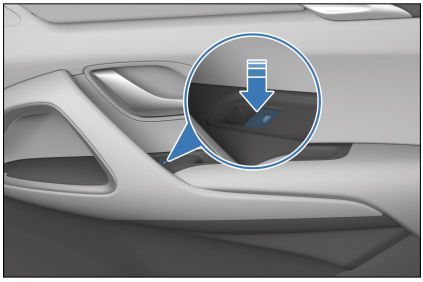
Window Lock Button Power Window Switches

- When the window lock button is pressed, the red indicator of window lock goes on. Only the switch on the driver's side can control the window regulation of four doors, while the rear window switch cannot control the window regulation.
- When this button is pressed again, the red indicator of window lock goes out, and the rear window switch returns to normal operation.



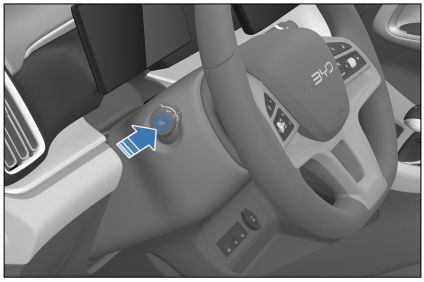
## Window Control Switch on Passenger Side

When the power gear of the whole vehicle is in "OK" or "OFF" gear (within the power-off delay time), the window control switch on the passenger side can control the corresponding window glass to rise and fall respectively.



## Odometer Switch

- Press the odometer switch to switch between "Total Mileage" - "Mileage 1" - "Mileage 2" - "HEV Mileage" - "EV Mileage " - "Total Mileage". The switching status is displayed accordingly on the instrument cluster.
- Long press TRIP A and TRIP B to reset the mileage to zero.



## Passenger Airbag Switch

- The front passenger airbag can be turned on or off through the front passenger airbag switch.
- The front passenger airbag switch is located on the front passenger side of the instrument panel and can be accessed when the front passenger side door is opened.




- The front passenger airbag status indicator is located at the front interior lamp of the vehicle.
- Check that the switch is in the required position.
- According to the information of the front passenger, the front airbag of the front passenger can be turned on or off:
  - When the switch is in the "ON" position, the front passenger airbag is activated, and the front passenger airbag status indicator "PASSENGER AIRBAG" "is normally on, "ON" and light up, and "OFF" and light down; when the vehicle is involved in a moderate to severe collision and the triggering conditions are met, the front passenger airbags will be deployed.
  - When the switch is at the "OFF" position, the front passenger airbag is turned off, and the front passenger airbag status indicator "PASSENGER AIRBAG" "is normally on, "ON "and light down, "OFF" and light up; when the vehicle is involved in a moderate to severe collision and the triggering conditions are met, the front passenger airbags will not be deployed.

**WARNING**

- When the passenger airbag is activated, do not use the rear-facing child seat in the passenger seat, otherwise it may involve life or cause serious personal injury.
- When an adult is seated in the front passenger seat, the front passenger airbag switch must be turned to the "ON" position to keep the front passenger airbag open all the time.
- If the front airbag of the front passenger is still open when the front passenger airbag switch is in the "OFF" position, please contact the authorized service shop of BYD Automobile immediately.

**CAUTION**

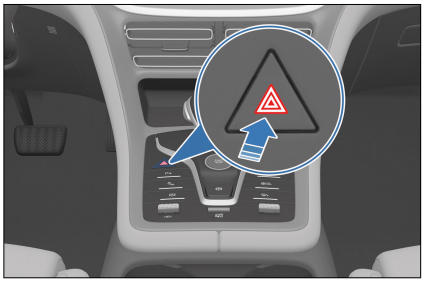
- To prevent damage to the airbag system, please operate the front passenger airbag switch when the vehicle is in the "OFF" position.

**CAUTION**

- The driver must confirm that the front passenger airbag switch is in the correct position for the front passenger.

## Hazard Warning Light Switch

After the switch is pressed, all turn signals start to flash, and the turn signal indicator on the instrument cluster flashes synchronously. Press it again to stop flashing.

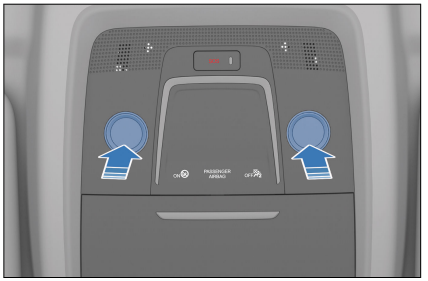


**WARNING**

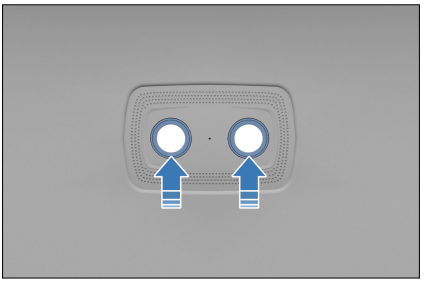
- The hazard warning lights are used to alert drivers and pedestrians of possible risks.

## Interior Light Switch

- Front Interior Lights



- Rear Interior Lights

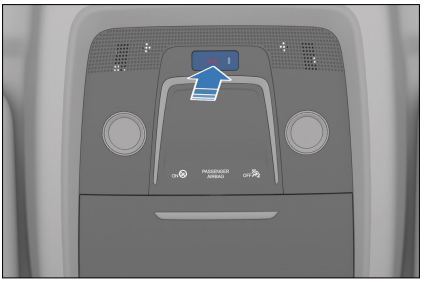


When the vehicle power is not OFF and the "DOOR" switch is turned on, if this switch is pressed with the door open, the interior light switches from high to low light, and does not go out. When the vehicle is powered off and the "DOOR" switch is turned on, the light goes out after a period of time if the door is opened. If there are other operations during the period, it is timed again. (The user can slide down the status bar at the top of the multimedia control screen to open the "Convenient" interface to open or close the "DOOR" switch.)

## E-Call Switch

**E-Call**

- E-Call refers to emergency call. Press down on the SOS button (duration: 2s⩽t⩽10s), and E-Call is triggered if this button is not pressed again within 5 seconds after the initial press.



- If users press the SOS button by mistake, they can press the SOS button again within 5 seconds to cancel the call.
- If an airbag deploys or a severe collision is detected, E-Call is triggered automatically.
- Upon triggering, the E-Call system automatically makes an emergency call and communicates the minimum set of data (MSD) to a Public Safety Answering Point (PSAP).

**REMINDER**

- If the SOS button is pressed and held for over 20 seconds, SOS is deemed to have permanently short-circuited (i.e. the button is stuck). Under this circumstance, E-Call cannot be triggered manually.
- E-Call cannot be canceled manually after being triggered. The E-Call system will begin 60-minute callback time after the call is hung up by the public safety answering point or is not answered when it has been dialed 10 consecutive times.
- During the POST of E-Call system, the indicator flashes quickly at 2 Hz; when the E-Call system works normally without any fault, the indicator stays ON; during a voice call triggered by the E-Call system, the indicator flashes at 1 Hz; when the voice call ends, the indicator stays ON; when the GPS signal is weak, the indicator flashes slowly at 0.5 Hz, and stays ON when the GPS signal returns to normal; when the E-Call system detects a serious fault, the indicator remains OFF.

# 04 USING AND DRIVING

Charging/Discharging Instructions ..... 88
Battery ..... 104
Usage Precautions ..... 107
Starting and Driving ..... 123
Driver Assistance ..... 134
Other Main Functions ..... 196

# Charging/ Discharging Instructions

## Charging Instructions

### Charging Safety Warnings

- Never allow juveniles to touch or use the charging equipment, and always keep them away during charging, as the charging equipment is a high-voltage electrical appliance.
- Charge the vehicle in a relatively safe environment, and avoid charging in areas with fire, dangerous liquid chemicals, thunder, flammable and combustible substances or heat sources.
- To reduce the risk of electric shock and personal injury, never operate the equipment with wet hands and touch the exposed metal of the charging port or charging base.
- Since charging may affect medical electronic devices and even cause serious personal injury or death, if you use any medical electronic device (such as implantable pacemaker or implantable cardiovascular defibrillator), before charging, confirm with the device manufacturer whether charging affects the normal operation of the device.

**Warnings for charging equipment**

- Use only certified charging equipment specifically designed for electric vehicles and consistent with applicable national standards:
  - To avoid charging failure or fire, do not modify, disassemble, or repair the charging equipment and related ports. Contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for handling if there is a fault.
  - Uncertified products are strictly prohibited.
- Never use the charging equipment if the household power strip cable becomes soft, if the charging connector cable is worn out, if the insulation layer is cracked, or in case of any other damage.
- Never use the equipment when the charging connector, power plug, or power strip is disconnected or broken, or if there is any sign of surface damage.
- Grounding instructions for charging equipment:
  - The equipment must be properly grounded. In the event of failure or damage to the equipment, the grounding cable provides a minimum impedance to circuit discharge and thereby reducing the risk of electric shock.
  - The equipment comes with a ground cable connecting its ground point with that of the power plug, which must match a properly installed and well-grounded power supply outlet.
- When charging, do not place the equipment in the trunk, under the front of the vehicle, or near the tires.

**Warnings before charging**

- Before charging, ensure that there is no water or foreign materials in the charge ports of the vehicle, power supply equipment, and charging equipment, and no damage or bad effect caused by metal terminal rust or corrosion. In the event of any of the situations above, do not charge.

**Warnings during charging**

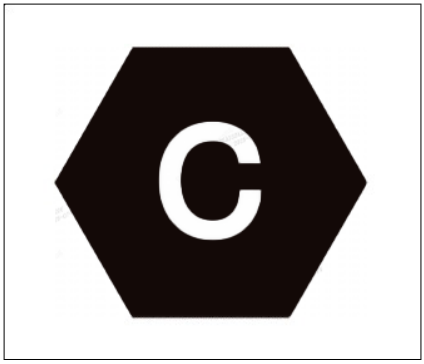
- To prevent serious personal injury, pay attention to the following precautions during charging:
  - Do not touch the metal connection of the charging port, charging connector, or plug.
  - Do not charge or touch the vehicle in thunderstorm weather. Lightning strikes may cause damage to the charging equipment and personal injuries.
  - If anything abnormal is found in the vehicle or charging equipment when charging, including abnormal smell or smoking, stop immediately and contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
  - Do not conduct vehicle repairs during charging.

**Warnings after charging**

- Always unplug the charging and discharging equipment and close the charging port flap before driving.

**Compatibility of vehicle and charging infrastructure**

- The signs are located on the vehicle's charging socket, components of the local charging infrastructure (charging stations and sockets) and on the charging cable.




- The signs refer to standardized charging systems in accordance with DIN EN 62196.

**Charging Precautions**

- AC and DC charging can be carried out in any power supply position. To ensure safety, it is recommended to power off the vehicle before charging. The vehicle can not be powered OK during charging.
- When the external power supply is cut off for a short time and then recovered again, BYD charging equipment automatically restarts charging, without the need for reconnecting.
- If you need to stop charging before the battery is fully charged, try to use early stop set for the charger first instead of directly unplugging the charger.
- If the vehicle will not be used for a long time, it is recommended to charge it once a month at least.

**Charging Precautions**

- Precautions for avoiding damages to charging equipment:
  - Before starting the vehicle, make sure that the charging device is disconnected, as the charging device locking mechanism can cause damage to the charging device and the vehicle if the charging connector is not inserted in place and the vehicle is driven with the transmission gear engaged.
  - Do not close the charging port flap when the charging port protective cap is open.
  - To prevent the charging port flap from malfunction, do not open and close the flap repeatedly. It is recommanded that the time interval

to open and close the flap is over 1 second.

- If the charging port flap and charger are frozen, do not forcibly open the charging port hatch or pull out the charger.
- To avoid the damage of vehicle, do not shake the charging connector when charging, otherwise the vehicle charging port may be damaged.
- Do not forcibly attempt to insert the charger when the electric lock is locked.

- Charge and discharge equipment should be used with care:
  - The length of the charging cable is limited. Do not pull the charging cable forcibly. Do not pull or twist the charging cable.
  - Do not hit the charging equipment, take it gently and prevent mechanical damage due to falling or collision.
  - Do not store or use the charging equipment at a temperature above 50°C.
  - Do not expose the charging equipment to heat.
- Additional wires or adapters/ connectors are not recommended. If the adapter must be added, please select the appropriate wire diameter ($\geqslant$1.5mm$^2$), and the parameters of the adapter must meet the requirements.

**Precautions before charging:**

- When the charging port flap is locked, do not force it open.
- Ensure that there are no foreign objects in the charger and charging port, and the anti-touch cap of the charger terminal is not loose or deformed.
- When the charging port is unlocked, hold the charger, aim it at the charging port and push it in. Check to ensure it is properly inserted.

**Precautions during charging:**

- It is recommended that no one stay in the vehicle during charging.
- The A/C can be used as normal while the vehicle is being charged.
- It is recommended to park the vehicle in a ventilated area. Do not block the air intake grille.
- It is normal that the charging power may fluctuate a short time as displayed on the instrument cluster when the battery is heated during charging.
- During charging, battery cooling may start, and the compressor, fan and other components work when necessary. It is normal that there will be some noise under the hood.
- Before charging is completed, battery equalization is activated to improve the service life, which may prolong the charging time.
- Do not coil the charging cable during charging, or the heat dissipation is adversely affected.
- In the case of low-temperature charging, battery thermal management can improve the lowtemperature charging ability, but the charging time is prolonged and the heating power consumption is increased.These are normal phenomenons.
  - In cold regions, it is recommended to charge the vehicle indoors with heating.
  - In hot regions, it is recommended to charge the vehicle in a cool and ventilated place.

- During charging, the expected remaining time for a full charge is displayed on the instrument cluster. The remaining time for a full charge may vary depending on such different conditions as temperature, SOC, and charging facilities.

**Precautions after Charging:**

- If you need to stop charging before the battery is fully charged, try to use early stop set for the charger first instead of directly unplugging the charger.
- Stop charging first and make sure the charge port is unlocked.
- Hold the charging connector with one hand and remove the connector.
- After charging, please unlock it first and then pull out the charging plug.
- Do not forcibly pull out the charger when the charging port is locked for fear of damaging the charging port.
- After the charger is unplugged, reinsert the charging port protective cap and close the charging port flap to prevent water or foreign matters that may affect the normal use.

**Recommendations for improving the driving experience:**

- Charge the vehicle immediately when the State of Charge (SOC) on the instrument cluster reaches the red area, for it indicates that the high-voltage battery is about to run out and failure to do so reduces the battery life.
- It is recommended to charge immediately after the end of power usage for better charging performance.

**Charging Method**

The pure electric vehicle is driven by electric energy supplied from the high-voltage battery. In order to avoid power loss of power battery and affect the car experience, please charge in time and estimate the power demand before driving.

**Vehicle Charging Method:**

- Household Portable AC Charging
- Using AC Charging Piles

**CAUTION**

- The charging time of a high-voltage battery varies with the charging mode, current SOC, real-time temperature, service time, ambient temperature, and other factors.
- Select charging equipment conforming to local national standards.

**Charging Mode**

**Vehicle Charging Mode:**

- Charging Reservation (Only AC): charge the vehicle at the time set by the user.
- Instant Charging: charging starts after the charging connector is connected.

**REMINDER**

- In the process of waiting for reservation charging, the power consumption of the whole vehicle increases. Waiting for a long time will lead to a reduction in vehicle

**REMINDER**

power and driving range, which is a normal situation.

**General Charging Troubleshooting**

| Fault State | Possible Causes | Solutions |
|---|---|---|
| Charger is connected, charge starts, but battery will not charge. | High-voltage battery fully charged | Charging is stopped automatically when the high-voltage battery is fully charged. |
| | High-voltage battery temperature is too high or too low | Keep the vehicle in an environment with appropriate temperature and charge it when the temperature becomes normal. |
| | Low voltage battery over-discharges. | Replace the low-voltage battery. |
| | Charging equipment failure | If it is verified that the charging equipment's power indicator is working properly, or that there are no other unusual indications, change the charging equipment or contact the charging equipment supplier. |
| | Vehicle displays the fail. | Verify that there is a charging system fault message on the instrument cluster, then stop the charging. It is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider. |
| Charging interrupted | Power Failure | In the process of AC charging, when the external power grid is cut off for a short time and the power is supplied again, BYD charging equipment will automatically restart charging without reconnecting the charging equipment. |
| | Charging cable is not connected properly | Verify that the charging connection cable is not loosely connected. |
| | High-voltage battery temperature is too high or too low | If the instrument cluster shows that EV function is limited, the charging will automatically stop. Charge the vehicle when the battery temperature returns to a normal level. |
| | Vehicle or charging pile fault | Check if there is any charging pile or vehicle fault prompt, and contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider if necessary. |

## Charging Method

- Check before charging:
  - Check the charging device for abnormalities such as cracked housing, worn cable, rusted plug, or foreign materials.

- Do not charge when the charging device is loosely connected.
- Make sure the port is clear of fluids or foreign objects, and its metal terminals are not rusty or corroded.
- In any of these cases, do not charge. Otherwise, personal injury may occur due to short circuit or electric shock.

- When charging in rain, please protect the charging device from water ingress.

### Household Portable AC Charging

#### Before Using the Household Portable AC Charging

- To avoid serious personal injury, please carefully read and follow the charging safety warnings in the charging instructions in this chapter.
- To avoid damage to the charging equipment and vehicle, please carefully read and follow the charging precautions in the charging/discharging instructions in this chapter.

#### Equipment Description

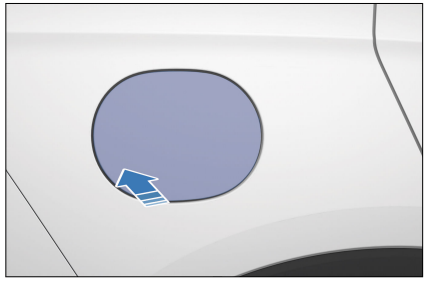
- The AC charging connection device can connect the vehicle with the household standard socket to charge.
- The power socket shall be a household socket conforming to relevant national standards to avoid circuit damage and tripping caused by high-power charging, so as not to affect the normal use of other equipment.
- It consists of a power plug (complying with National standards), charger, plug/charger protective cap, a connecting cable, referred to as 3-to-7 adapter. The plug is connected to a standard household power socket, and the charging connector to the vehicle's charging port.
- The use of special AC circuit and power supply socket conforming with the local standard is recommended.
- Charging time: refer to the charging time prompt on the instrument cluster.

**REMINDER**

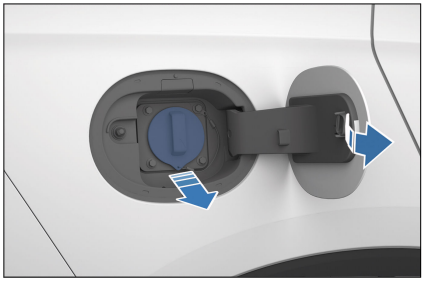
- Please contact a BYD authorized service provider or local electrician and select an appropriate power supply as required for the charging equipment.
- When charging with an on-board charger, please activate the anti-theft alarm.

#### Charging Instructions

1. Open the charging flap:
   - Unlock the vehicle and press the charging port flap to open it automatically.



2. Open the protective cap of AC charging port flap:
   - Open the cap for the charging connector and the socket, and make sure that the ends of the charging connector and socket are free of obstructions.



3. Connect the power supply port:
   - Plug the 3-to-7 power supply plug into the household socket and the indicator is red and continue to light.
4. Connect the vehicle charging port:
   - Plug the charging connector (3-to-7 adapter) into the port and make sure it is tight.
   - Once the charger is connected properly, the charging connection indicator on the instrument cluster goes on. The charging indicator of the 3-7 connector will flash (green light).

**REMINDER**

- After the 3-7 connector indicator flashes (green light), an appointment for charging can be set through the instrument settings. See the smart charging function settings in this chapter for the setting process.
- Reservation charging cannot be used when the remaining battery is too low.

**Instructions for Stopping Charging**

1. End the charging:
   - When the vehicle is fully charged, charging stops automatically.
   - To stop charging in advance, go to the next step.
2. Disconnect the charging port:
   - If the working mode of the Charging Port Immobilizer System on the touchscreen is Disable/Intelligent, the charger can be pulled out directly after it is fully charged; if it is not fully charged, it is necessary to press the key unlock button or press the microswitch on the door handle (when the key is nearby), and then pull out the charger.
   - If the working mode of the Charging Port Immobilizer System on the touchscreen is Enable, press the unlock button on the key or press the microswitch on the door handle (when the key is nearby) and pull out the charger.

**CAUTION**

- To stop DC charging, turn off the charger before disconnecting the charging connector. In Mode 2 charging, remove the charging connector and then the power plug.

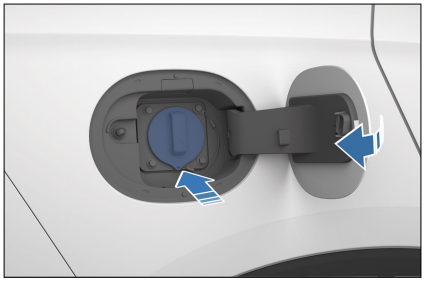
**REMINDER**

- To unlock the vehicle, press the unlock button on the key (when charging the vehicle with ignition switched off) or press the microswitch on the door handle (when the key is nearby).
- When the charging port anti-theft lock is activated, please unlock the vehicle first to unlock this anti-theft lock, and then pull the charger out within 30s, or the antitheft lock will re-lock.
- You can activate the anti-theft lock on the multimedia touchscreen, as detailed in ***P101***.

**REMINDER**

- If the charging connector cannot be removed after unlocking, try a few more unlocking attempts. If that does not work, try emergency unlocking. For the operating procedure, see ***P102***.

3. Disconnect the power plug.
4. Close the charging port cap and the port flap.
5. After discharging, put the 3-to-7 adapter into the storage box in the trunk.



**Using AC Charging Piles**

**Before Using the Single-phase AC Charging:**

- To avoid serious personal injury, please carefully read and follow the charging safety warnings in the charging instructions in this chapter.
- To avoid damage to the charging equipment and vehicle, please carefully read and follow the safety precautions for charging in the charging instructions in this chapter.

**Equipment Description**

- Single-phase AC charging box
  - Single-phase AC charging box: It consists of a charging box, charger, and a connecting cable. See the charging box manual for information about the circuit breaker and emergency stop switch.
  - Charge the vehicle with a charging box that meets the requirements of the local standard. See the Owner's Manual or relevant instructions for the use of the charging equipment.
- Single-phase AC charging pile*
  - Use single-phase AC charging piles in public places to charge the vehicle. Since some charging piles are not equipped with charging connectors, AC charging connectors need to be prepared.
- Three-phase AC charging pile*
  - Use AC charging piles in public places to charge the vehicle. AC charging piles are usually installed in public places such as hypermarkets, shopping plazas and parking lots.
  - The vehicle can also be charged with BYD three-phase AC charging piles. See the User's Manual or relevant instructions for the use of the charging equipment.
  - Charging time: Refer to the charging time prompt on the instrument cluster.
- AC connection device
  - It consists of a power plug (complying with local standards), charger, plug/charger protective cover, and a connecting cable, which is referred to as a 7-7 connector. The power plug is connected to the power outlet of the charging pile, and the charger is connected to the charging port of the vehicle.

**REMINDER**

- Make sure to properly identify the power plug and charging connector to avoid a reverse connection when using the 7-7 connector.
- The 7-7 connector is not provided with the car. If necessary, it is recommended to go to BYD authorized dealer or service provider to buy it yourself.
- The three-phase AC charging power shall be subject to the actual charging power of the vehicle.
- Some three-phase AC charging piles are not compatible with single-phase AC charging function or limit charging power, which may lead to problems such as AC charging failure and low charging power. Please contact the charging pile or charging station for details.

**Charging Instructions**

1. Open the charging port flap and the charging port protective cap:
   - Unlock the charging port flap, then open the port protective cap (refer to ***P93***).
2. Connect the power supply port:
   - This step is not required if the charging box is used to charge the vehicle.
   - Skip this step if the AC charging pile equipped with a charger is used.
   - If a single-phase AC charging pile is used and the charging pile is not equipped with a charger, it is necessary to use a 7-7 connector. When using it, connect the power plug to the power outlet on the charging pile.
3. Connect the vehicle charging port:
   - Insert the charger of the charging device into the charging port, and lock it reliably.
4. Charging settings:
   - This step can be skipped for a singlephase AC charging box or an AC charging pile without setting options in public places.
   - For AC charging pile/box subject to authentication, swipe the card or scan the QR code. For details, see the user manual for charging pile/box.
5. The charging connection indicator on the instrument cluster lights up.

**REMINDER**

- During charging, the instrument cluster displays relevant charging parameters and the charging screen.
  - Reservation charging can be set from the touchscreen (please refer to ***P97*** - "Reservation Charging" in this chapter).

**Instructions for Stopping Charging**

1. End the charging:
   - The charging is stopped automatically when the charging equipment is set to stop charging in advance or when the vehicle is fully charged.
2. Disconnect the charging port:
   - Refer to ***P93*** to disconnect the charger from the charging port.
3. Disconnect the power plug:
   - If a 7-7 connector is used, it is recommended to pull out the charger

first and then disconnect the power plug.

- This step is not required if the charging box is used to charge the vehicle.
- Skip this step if the AC charging pile equipped with a charger is used.

4. Close the AC charging port protective cap and the port flap (see ***P93***).
5. Put the charging equipment in order.
   - Place the charger at the designated position in the AC charging pile/box (if used).
   - Put the 7-7 connector (if used) in order.

### Smart Charging

- The vehicle can set the charging mode through the multimedia touchscreen or BYD assistant, and the setting page can be entered in the following ways:
  - Go to the setting interface through the BYD APP in the multimedia application list.
  - Go to the "Smart Charging" setting interface through multimedia touchscreen → Settings → Energy → Charging and Discharging.
  - Go to the setting interface by calling "Hi, BYD. Turn on the Smart Charging"; "Hi, BYD. I want to use the Smart Charging"; and "Hi, BYD. Please turn on the Smart Charging".
- Exit the Smart Charging screen by tapping the return key /home key or using BYD assistant:
  - Exit the setting interface by calling "Hi, BYD. Turn off the Smart Charging"; "Hi, BYD. Exit the Smart Charging mode".

### Reservation Charging Instructions

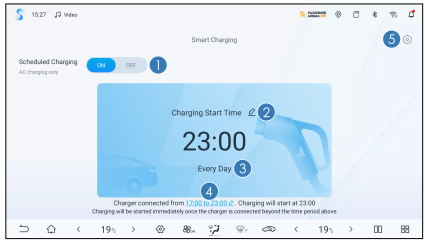
① Scheduled charging

② Charging start time

③ Repeat cycle

④ Charging waiting time

⑤ Settings




- The factory setting mode is the Instant Charging, so Reservation Charging is turned off.
- To schedule a charging, toggle the reservation charging ON ①, set the charging start time ② and repeat cycle ③, then save the settings.
- After successful setting of the Reservation Charging, a prompt of the charging start time is given by the multimedia touchscreen if the charger is connected or the power button is pressed within the charging waiting time to power off the vehicle; at this time, you can switch to Instant Charging as needed.
- Tap the Smart Charging icon ⑤ to turn off the "Plug in charger" reminder and "Power off" reminder in the "Reservation Charging" reminder.

**CAUTION**

- The smart charging (including Reservation Charging) function is only developed for AC slow charging equipment distributed by BYD. When using AC slow

**CAUTION**

charging equipment not certified by BYD, this function shall be turned off; otherwise, the charging equipment may not respond, resulting in failure to reservation or immediate charging, resulting in power shortage of the vehicle and low battery.

**REMINDER**

- The smart charging function is only applicable to the BYD AC charging pile. If it needs to be applied to public charging facilities, please confirm that the facilities support vehicle-end reservations.
- When the battery level is low, the vehicle is charged at the minimum level before the reservation, during which the multimedia may still display the "Power off" reminder and "Plug in charger" reminder, and the corresponding prompt appears in the lower part of the instrument cluster.
- Reminder interface "Instant Charging" is only for this reservation. If you need to cancel all reservations, please turn off the reservation charging switch in the setting interface.

## Discharging Instructions

- The vehicle supports the vehicle to load function (VTOL).

**WARNING**

- Do not touch any metal terminal of the discharging socket or vehicle charge port during discharging.
- Stop discharging immediately if there are any abnormalities such as peculiar smell and smoke.
- Discharge safety warnings are the same as charging safety warnings (see Charging Instructions).
- Store the product in a cool and dry place when it is not in use.
- When charging, do not place the equipment in the trunk, under the front of the vehicle, or near the tires.
- When using the equipment, prevent it from getting rolled over by the vehicle, dropped, or trampled on.
- Never drop the equipment or move it by pulling it directly by the cable. Take caution when moving the equipment.
- Never use the charging equipment if the power strip cable becomes soft, the charging connector cable is worn out, the insulation layer is cracked, or any other damage occurs.
- Do not use the equipment when the discharging connector or power strip experiences a breakage, crack or other exposed damage.

**CAUTION**

- For precautions concerning use of the discharge connection device, please refer to the precautions for

**CAUTION**

charging equipment included in item 3 of "Charging Precautions".

- Before VTOL, ensure that the load is turned off.
- During VTOL, the engine is started when the battery level is low. Please do not use the VTOL function in a confined space or any other place adjacent to flammables and explosives.
- When VTOL, it will turn off when the allowable discharge power is exceeded. At this time, please reduce the power of the equipment, and plug/unplug the discharging equipment again.

**REMINDER**

- Try to use this function when the SOC is high.
- When the vehicle is powered off, the static power consumption of the vehicle will increase if the VTOL connection device is connected for an extended period without any output. Therefore, removing the discharging connector when the device is not used is recommended.

**Vehicle-to-Load (V2L)**

**Inspection before Discharging**

- Discharge safety warnings are the same as charging safety warnings. To avoid serious personal injury, please carefully read and follow the charging safety warnings in the charging instructions in this chapter.
- Precautions for discharging are the same as those for charging. To avoid damage to the charging equipment and vehicle, please carefully read and follow the safety precautions for charging in the charging instructions in this chapter.
- Ensure that the battery capacity of the vehicle to be discharged is not below 15%.
- In case of any situation above, do not perform the discharging operation, or it may cause a short circuit or electric shock, resulting in personal injury.
  - Ensure the VTOL connecting device casing is not cracked, and its plug is free from rust or obstructions.
  - Make sure that the charging port is free of water or foreign matters, and that the metal terminals are not damaged or affected by rust or corrosion.

**Equipment Description**

- Vehicle to Load (VTOL): It consists of a discharger, socket, cable, and discharger protective cap.

**Starting Discharging Instructions**

1. Open the charging port flap and the charging port protective cap:
   - Before discharging, deactivate the anti-theft function.
   - Unlock the switch of charging port flap, and open the charging port flap and protective cap (See ***P93***).
2. Connect the discharge device:
   - Connect the VTOL discharger into the charging port reliably.
3. Start discharging
   - Press the switch on the discharging outlet and wait for a few seconds. If the outlet indicator (red light) stays on, the outlet can be used.
   - After the connection is made, discharge begins and respective

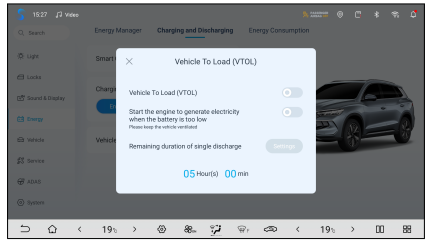
information is displayed on the instrument cluster.

**Instructions for Stopping Discharging**

1. Stop discharging:
   - Disconnect the load.
   - The following steps are only operated in an emergency (not recommended).
2. Disconnect the discharging equipment:
   - Press the key unlock button or press the microswitch on the door handle (when the key is nearby), and then pull out the discharge gun.
   - Close the charging port protective cap and the port flap (see ***P93***).
3. Put the equipment in order:
   - After discharging, put the discharging equipment into the storage box or storage bag of the trunk.

**Discharging Duration Setting Instructions**

- After the vehicle is connected to the discharger, the VTOL function is automatically activated. At the same time, the countdown can be observed on the instrument cluster and the multimedia touchscreen. The default duration of single discharging on the multimedia control screen is 5 hours.
- The user can enter the "Vehicle To Load (VTOL)" through multimedia touchscreen → Settings → Energy → Charging and Discharging.
  - After the vehicle is connected to the discharger, tap the Vehicle To Load (VTOL) button to turn it on or off as needed.




- When the vehicle is powered off and discharged to a low SOC, tap the "Start the engine to generate electricity when the power is too low" switch to enable the function if it is necessary to start the engine for continuous discharging.

**REMINDER**

- When the vehicle is powered ON and discharged to a low SOC, the vehicle automatically starts the engine for power generation without setting.

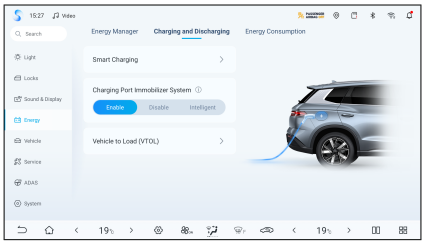
- Tap Settings on the touchscreen to set the required discharging duration.

**CAUTION**

- The discharging function cannot be enabled when the discharger is not connected. Tapping the "Vehicle To Load (VTOL)" button makes it go on for a while and then go off, which is normal.
- When the discharging is started, if the power of the vehicle is too low and less fuel is left for power generation or the discharging time is set too long, the vehicle may be not discharge according to the set time, so the VTOL function will be turned off in advance, which is normal.

# Charging Port Immobilizer System

The charging port of the vehicle has an anti-theft function to prevent theft. This function is in the "Disable" state by default. To activate the anti-theft function, go to multimedia touchscreen → Settings → Energy → Charging and Discharging → Charging Port Immobilizer System and select "Enable".




- In the Enable/Disable/Intelligent, users can unlock and unplug the charger in the following ways during charging:
  - Press the unlock button on the intelligent key when the vehicle is powered off.
  - Press the microswitch next to the exterior door handle of the driver's door.
  - Press the central door lock below the window inside the driver's door.

| No. | Charging Port Immobilizer System Setting Status | Four-door anti-theft lock state | Whether the vehicle is fully charged | Whether the charger can be unplugged |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | Enable | Locking | / | No |
| 2 | Enable | Unlocking | / | Yes |
| 3 | Disable | Locking | / | Yes |
| 4 | Disable | Unlocking | / | Yes |
| 5 | Intelligent | Locking | Vehicle is fully charged | Yes |
| | | | Vehicle not fully charged | No |
| 6 | Intelligent | Unlocking | / | Yes |

- As shown in the table above, if the vehicle is in the state 2/3/4, users can unlock and unplug the charger by pressing the charger button in addition to the above unlocking operations. However, this operation, as an emergency operation, may affect the service life of the charging port or charger and thus is not recommended to be performed frequently.

**CAUTION**

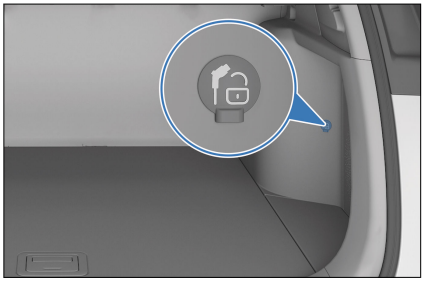
- After unlocking the charger, it can be pulled out within 30 seconds. After 30 seconds, it will lock again.

**Emergency Unlocking of the Charging Port**

- When the electric lock fails and the charger cannot be unplugged, try to unplug it by manually unlocking the charge port.
- When the charging port flap cannot be opened in case of failure of the actuator or low-voltage battery, try to open the charging port flap by manual emergency unlocking.

**Electric Lock Cable of Charger**

1. Open the trunk. There is an emergency cable for the charging port flap on the right side panel inside the trunk.
2. Unlocking the cable latch and pulling the emergency cable to unlock the charging port flap.
3. Reset the emergency cable latch after the unlocking is complete.



**REMINDER**

- If any abnormality or failure of the function is found, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

## SOC Balance Function

- When the vehicle runs in dual modes, the SOC balance function is available to reserve power for such operations as rapid acceleration. When the vehicle runs stably, the SOC fluctuates around the balance point.
- The vehicle controller can memorize the SOC balance point set last time.

**REMINDER**

- When the vehicle runs stably at a certain speed after the engine startup, a part of the torque output by the engine drives the generator to generate electricity and charge the power battery.
- If the difference between the current power and the SOC balance point is large, it may take a long time to reach the set value.

**SOC Balance Setting**

- Power balance is the power state that the user expects the whole vehicle to achieve during driving. The user can open the "Convenient" interface by sliding down the status bar on the top of the multimedia control screen or set the "SOC" through the multimedia touchscreen → Settings → Energy → Energy Management.
  - AI energy management: AI algorithm is used to intelligently adjust the vehicle power and HEV/EV mode according to navigation, environment, vehicle status and vehicle habits, so as to achieve the best fuel economy.
  - Compulsory SOC hold: The priority is to maintain the power, and the power is as close as possible to the target power.

- If it is convenient to charge the vehicle at the destination, it is recommended to lower the SOC balance point to make full use of the stored electric energy to drive the vehicle and save fuel consumption.
- If it is inconvenient to charge the vehicle at the destination, it is recommended to increase the balance point so as to maintain electric power level of the vehicle and improve the driving experience.
- In order to ensure the driving experience, the vehicle will automatically adjust the target power balance point according to the altitude and ambient temperature.
- Priorities of intelligent/mandatory electricity protection related vehicle energy management:
  - Intelligent SOC hold: give priority to fuel economy and consider the demand for SOC hold.
  - Compulsory SOC hold: In the HEV mode of the whole vehicle, set the mandatory power protection to keep the priority power, and the SOC is as close as possible to the set value.

**CAUTION**

- The mandatory battery protection function only takes effect in HEV mode. If the mandatory battery protection function is enabled in EV mode, the function will not take effect. In order to ensure your car experience, it is recommended to switch to HEV mode and then enable the mandatory battery protection.

**Energy Regeneration Intensity Settings**

There are two modes of energy feedback: standard mode and larger mode. Users can set the “Regenerative Braking" through the multimedia touchscreen → Energy → Energy Manager according to their driving habits.

- If the mode is not set by the user, the factory default setting is always maintained.
- The set value is memorized and becomes the default value after each power-on.

**In-Situ Power Generation Function**

When the SOC is lower than a certain value during parking, the engine drives the alternator to charge the high-voltage battery. During power generation, the engine speed is higher than normal idle speed, which is a normal phenomenon. When the electric quantity is higher than a certain electric quantity, it will withdraw from in-situ power generation.

**Mode Memory Function**

- In the case of high SOC, the vehicle is automatically switched to EV mode when it is powered on. Driving in this mode is highly recommended.
- When the vehicle SOC is moderate, the vehicle defaults to the previous driving mode when it is powered on. The driver can manually select the required mode through the mode switch now.

**Power Generation Function by Stepping on the Accelerator Pedal**

- With the vehicle in P gear and HEV mode, when SOC is lower than a certain value, press the accelerator pedal to trigger the power generation function. The different levels of power generation can be achieved by controlling the accelerator pedal stroke.

# Battery

## High-Voltage Battery

- The high-voltage battery is one of the power sources of the vehicle, which is located under the floor and can be recharged repeatedly. The high-voltage battery can be charged through the external power supply by means of Household portable AC charging, AC charging pile charging, and also by the motor when the vehicle is being braked, coasting or the engine is started.

**CAUTION**

- The power battery is located at the bottom of the vehicle body. In case of rough or waterlogged roads, please drive carefully to avoid damaging the battery.

**REMINDER**

- When the vehicle is in "ON" gear or "OK" gear, the high-voltage line will be connected.
- Due to different driving habits, road conditions, temperature and whether the electrical equipment is turned on or not, the pure electric mileage will increase or decrease.
- In order to prolong the service life and ensure the safety of the battery, the battery system switches the charging mode to the trickle charging mode when the battery SOC is high, and the charging time may be lengthened.
- Due to the chemical characteristics of the battery itself, the battery capacity of the used vehicle has a natural attenuation phenomenon, and its pure electric mileage will be reduced accordingly. When the driving range of your vehicle in pure electric mode is shortened, go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for checking.

**REMINDER**

**High-voltage Battery Maintenance**

- To keep the battery at its best, charge it fully with a AC charging adapter on a regular basis (at least once a week).
- When the vehicle is not used for more than 7 days, in order to prolong its service life, it is recommended to keep the battery power in the range of 40% ~ 60% SOC. When the vehicle is not to be used for more than 3 months, it must be charged to 100% and then discharged to 40%~60% SOC, so as to avoid battery performance worsening or even damage.

**High-Voltage Battery Thermal Management**

- When the outside temperature is high or low, the thermal management system of the power battery will start and cool or heat the battery, improve the charging speed and ensure the power performance and endurance mileage of the vehicle.

**REMINDER**

- The normal operating temperature of the high-voltage battery is within -35-60°C.

**High-Voltage Battery Recycling**

When the new energy vehicle is to be scrapped, please follow the following procedures:

1. Send the vehicle to a BYD recycling service outlet, which evaluates the scrap value of the high-voltage battery.
2. After the evaluation, send the vehicle to a vehicle recycling and disassembling enterprise to remove its high-voltage battery.
3. After the high-voltage battery is removed, hand over it to the recycling service outlet for repurchasing.

**WARNING**

- New energy car owners have the responsibility and obligation to hand over waste high-voltage batteries to the recycling service outlet. Anyone who hands over a used high-voltage battery to any other organization or individual, or removes/disassembles a high-voltage battery without authorization, shall be liable for any environmental pollution or safety incident so caused.

## Low-Voltage Battery

- The low-voltage battery used in this vehicle is a BYD self-developed lithium iron phosphate battery. The low-voltage battery has intelligent charging function. When the low-voltage battery power is low, the vehicle may automatically start the power battery or the engine to charge the low-voltage battery, so as to extend the duration of the low-voltage battery.

**REMINDER**

- When the vehicle is powered off for smart charging, it makes such a normal sound as when the vehicle is powered on.
- Make sure that all electrical equipment is turned off and the doors are closed when leaving the vehicle.

**Wakeup in case of low vehicle battery SOC**

**Wake-up by the driver's door microswitch**

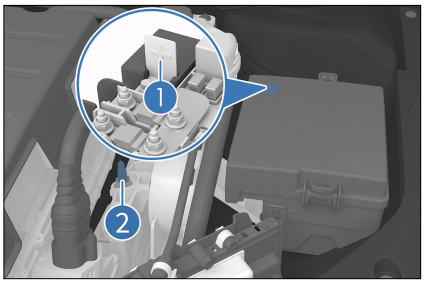
- The low-voltage battery features the dormancy wakeup function. After long-term parking, if the vehicle locating and unlocking cannot be realized with the smart key, the low-voltage battery may be in a dormant state. At this time, press the micro switch of the driver's door handle (please refer to ***P60***) to wake up the low-voltage battery. After the vehicle is unlocked, it can be used normally.

**Wakeup by Jump Start**

- When the vehicle cannot be waked up and unlocked by the driver's door microswitch, use the mechanical key to open the door. Then, a 12V power supply can be used to start the vehicle through two special cables for the jump start. In this case, the low-voltage battery SOC is low and the vehicle may become dormant again. Start the vehicle immediately and keep it started for over 15 minutes to ensure that the low-voltage battery is fully charged.
- The jump start can only be carried out through the special interface of the front compartment fuse box. The connection terminals for the jump start are shown in the figure.

① Positive terminal for the jump start

② Negative terminal for the jump start




- If the vehicle cannot be woken up and started by the above operations, please contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider immediately.

**WARNING**

- It is strictly prohibited to connect the vehicle with other vehicles for a jump start when its OK indicator is off; otherwise, the low-voltage battery may be damaged.
- If the low-voltage battery SOC is too low or the battery fails, jump starting may be required. Please carefully read and strictly follow the jump starting instructions in this manual.
- The low-voltage battery contains an intelligent control module. To prevent battery damage, do not disassemble or damage this battery without permission, except in an emergency.
- Please disconnect the negative terminal of the low-voltage battery before replacing the parts and repairing and checking the vehicle.

**CAUTION**

- The operation space of the front compartment distribution box is limited, and there are certain circuit safety risks at the same time. It is recommended to carry out the operation under the guidance of professionals.
- Do not clean the low-voltage battery with liquid to prevent ingress.
- The jump start is only for starting the vehicle in a short time, so do not connect the overcurrent for a long time.

**Smart Charging Function**

- Low-voltage battery SOC triggers the smart charging function to extend the battery endurance.
- In case of low high-voltage battery SOC, the vehicle may start the engine for power generation to enable the smart charging function.
- The vehicle supports the smart charging function, so it is not necessary to disconnect the negative terminal from the low-voltage battery for long-term parking.

**CAUTION**

- Low-voltage battery SOC triggers the smart charging function, resulting in a decrease of the high-voltage battery SOC or the driving range in pure electric mode displayed on the instrument cluster, which is normal.
- After the vehicle is locked, a small amount of fuel will be consumed and a small amount of exhaust gas will be discharged

**CAUTION**

when the high-voltage battery is low enough to trigger the engine power generation function.

# Usage Precautions

## Break-in Period

- If the powertrain is difficult to start or stops rotating frequently, check the vehicle immediately.
- In case of any abnormal noise in the powertrain, pull over the vehicle for inspection.
- In case of serious coolant and lubricating oil leakage in the powertrain, pull over the vehicle for inspection.
- Break-in is required for the powertrain. It is recommended to carry out it for the first 2,000 km in "ECO" mode, drive smoothly, and avoid high-speed driving. The following precautions can effectively extend the service life of the vehicle:
- Avoid pressing the accelerator pedal when starting and driving the vehicle.
- Avoid overspeeding during driving.
- Avoid emergency braking within the first 300 km.
- Do not maintain a high or low speed for too long.
- Do not use the vehicle to tow other vehicles within the first 2,000 km of mileage.
- During the running-in period, the driving mileage of HEV mode (with the engine working) shall not be less than 50% of the total mileage.

## Trailer Towing*

### Towing Capacity

- The towing capacity depends on various factors such as vehicle specifications, loads, road conditions, and trailer specifications. In order to ensure the safety of driving, please do not exceed the speed limit or overload.
- The towed mass shall not exceed the following:

| Item | Data | Data Description |
|---|---|---|
| Maximum towing capacity (braked)(kg) | 750 | Maximum permissible total towed trailer mass with trailer brakes |
| Maximum towing mass (unbraked)(kg) | 750 | Maximum permissible total towed trailer mass with unbraked trailer |
| Maximum vertical load (kg) | 75 | Maximum vertical load allowed on the ball joint |

1. The maximum allowable towed mass is the gross mass of the trailer, including all cargo and additional equipment.

2. Maximum vertical load means the downforce exerted by the mass of the trailer on the trailer hitch when the whole vehicle is towing the trailer at rest.

**WARNING**

- The driver shall be qualified to drive in accordance with the total mass (towing vehicle mass plus towed mass).
- The vertical load acting on the connection of the trailer to the towing vehicle shall not be less than 4% of the gross mass of the trailer and shall not exceed the maximum vertical load on the trailer ball joint. Unbalanced weight on the wheels of the trailer or a heavy load at the rear may cause the Towing hook to sway or even lose control of the vehicle.
- When driving with a trailer, no one is allowed to ride on the trailer.
- When towing, the maximum allowable climbing gradient is 12%.
- Make sure that the cargo is always secured in the trailer and does not move. The movement of goods may cause the vehicle to lose control and even cause serious injury or death.
- Do not exceed the maximum allowable towing mass and maximum vertical load of the trailer hitch when driving with a trailer, otherwise it may cause an accident and cause serious personal injury.
- When the following conditions occur, do not drive with the trailer, so as not to cause the vehicle to lose stability or cause danger.

**WARNING**

  - Do not tow a trailer when the vehicle has a faulty tire.
  - Use temporarily repaired tires.
- When driving with a trailer, please abide by the relevant local laws and regulations, and it is strictly prohibited to refit without permission.
- When towing a trailer equipped with an electromagnetic brake, the installation plan of the electromagnetic brake synchronizer must be confirmed with the trailer seller.
- BYD does not assume any responsibility for injuries or vehicle damage caused by violation of requirements of vehicle towing instruction. Vehicle damages caused by towing or overloading are not covered under warranty.

**CAUTION**

- When the whole vehicle is loaded with a certain weight of equipment, personnel or goods, the vertical load will be reduced, thus weakening the towing capacity. The towing state shall ensure that the whole vehicle does not exceed the gross vehicle weight rating.

**Tire Pressure During Towing**

- To tow a trailer, adjust the tire pressure to accommodate additional loads.

Keep front tires inflated to 250 kPa, rear tires to 270 kPa.

- For towing, the technically permissible maximum mass on the rear axle may be exceeded by no more than 15% and the technically permissible laden mass of the vehicle may be exceeded by no more than 100 kg. In these cases, the vehicle speed must not exceed 100 km/h and the rear tyre pressure must be at least 20 kPa higher than normal recommended tire pressure.

**Side Mirrors and Holders for Towing**

- The field of view of the rearview mirror during towing should be comply with the laws and regulations. If the original rearview mirror does not meet the using conditions, install a suitable trailer rearview mirror. The trailer rearview mirror can be attached to the surface of the side mirror or clamped with a holder on the mirror frame. For detailed installation and usage instructions, please refer to manuals of the trailer rearview mirror.

**WARNING**

- During the running-in period of the new vehicle, do not drive with the trailer.
- Before driving with the trailer, the following operations must be carried out:
  - Know and comply with all local regulations and legal requirements regarding towing.
  - When towing, inflate the tires to the cold tire inflation pressure specified for towing.
  - Adjust the rearview mirror to provide a clear view to the rear without significant blind spots.

**WARNING**

- When connecting the towing device, ensure that the front and rear vehicles are placed horizontally. If the connection device tilts up and down in the connection state, please confirm whether the vertical load of the towing load is within the allowable range of the whole vehicle.
- Check the trailer lamps and turn signals to ensure that the lamps are in working order when towing the trailer.
- Verify that the trailer brakes are operating properly.
- Verify that all tow unit components, accessories, and electrical connectors are in good condition and properly connected. During the running-in period of the new vehicle, do not drive with the trailer.
- Verify that wheel chocks are available.
- Verify that the trailer load is evenly distributed.
- Place the heavy objects in the trailer near the axle as far as possible to reduce the interference to the train set when swinging.
- Make sure that the trailer cable does not touch or drag on the ground and that there is enough slack in the cable to allow turning.

- Please keep the towing device properly when driving without a trailer.
- Start driving:

**WARNING**

- Start smoothly, avoid rapid acceleration and emergency braking, otherwise the vehicle may be out of control due to skidding when driving on wet and slippery roads.
- Cross winds and rough roads may cause the vehicle to swing, seriously affecting the control of the vehicle. In any case, if you notice a slight swing of the vehicle, please hold the steering wheel tightly with both hands and slowly reduce the speed, and do not try to eliminate the swing by increasing the speed.
- Unloaded trailer load of the tractor will cause unreasonable load distribution. If it cannot be avoided, drive at low speed.

- Brake:
  - Sudden braking can cause skidding or scuffing at the bottom and loss of control.
  - Driving with a trailer will increase the braking distance of the vehicle, so it should keep at least twice the distance from the vehicle in front.
- Overtaking:
  - When driving with a trailer, it is necessary to go through a longer overtaking distance to overtake.
- Reversing:
  - When driving with a trailer, it is difficult to reverse, so it is necessary to operate cautiously and reverse at a low speed.
- Turning:

**WARNING**

- When driving with a trailer, turn smoothly, avoid bumps or sudden operation as far as possible, and turn on the turn signal in advance.
- The turning radius must be greater than without the trailer to prevent the trailer from hitting curbs, road signs, trees, or other objects.

- Parking on a slope:
  - Parking on a slope is not recommended. If it is necessary to stop on a slope, make sure that the slope does not exceed 12% and place wheel chocks:
    1. One person depresses and holds the brake pedal, and the other person places the wheel wedge under the wheel on the downhill side;
    2. When the wedge is in place, release the brake pedal and make sure that the wedge can bear the weight of the vehicle and trailer (automatic parking function is not activated).
    3. The vehicle shifts to park and confirms that the EPB is engaged.
- If it is necessary to stop on an incline, always ensure that all trailer wheels are securely chocked, as failure to do so may result in serious damage, injury or even death.

**CAUTION**

- Driving with trailer will attenuate the power, economy, durability and other performances of the

**CAUTION**

vehicle, which is a normal phenomenon.

**CAUTION**

- When hitching a trailer, the trailer's LED tail lights may flash very slightly, which is normal.

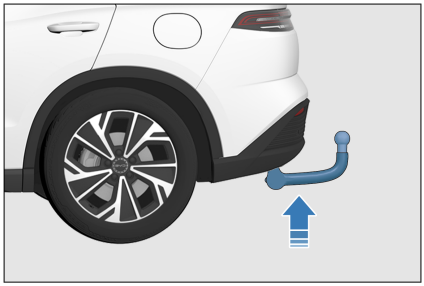
**General Towing Troubleshooting**

| Fault State | Possible causes | Solutions |
|---|---|---|
| It fails to enter the driving mode with a trailer. | The vehicle speed is not 0. | Pull up the hand brake, and enter the trailer driving mode again after the vehicle stops stably |
| | The cable is not connected or the cable contact is poor | Unplug the cable and reseat it |
| Trailer light failure | Poor cable contact | Unplug the cable and reseat it |
| | The fuse is blown | Contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider. |
| Trailer indicator icon turns red. | Unexpected disconnection of trailer cable during driving. | Pull over as soon as possible, get off to check the cable connection and plug it again. If the cable is damaged, please repair it in time. |

**Driving Mode with a Trailer**

- Equipment Description

Trailer hitch (corresponding standard of ball joint size: ECE R55)

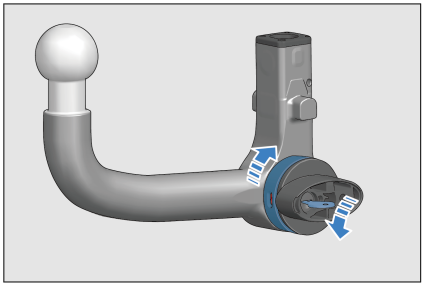


**REMINDER**

- To avoid rusting, store the trailer hitch properly after use.

- Installing the trailer hitch

1. Remove the trailer hitch from the storage pocket.
2. Remove the guard at the bottom of the rear bumper of the tractor.
3. Pull up the dust cover of the trailer hitch housing.
4. Insert the key and turn the lock cylinder counterclockwise. At this time, the knob switch can be pressed down.



5. Press the rotary switch, keep pressing the rotary switch and turn the rotary switch clockwise at the same time until it turns to the red position.
6. Hold the trailer hitch firmly from the bottom and align the triangular markings on both sides of the hook with the corresponding safety switches in the trailer hook housing.
7. Push the trailer hitch into the trailer hitch housing until the rotary switch is turned counterclockwise approximately 110 ° and automatically locks into the "closed position". At this time, the rotary switch is turned to the green area.
8. Visually check that the towbar is fully inserted into the housing. Try to pull the towbar down. The towbar should not drop when pulled down.
9. Turn the key clockwise to lock the trailer hitch, pull out the key and keep it properly (preferably in the vehicle).
10. Close the dust cover to prevent dust and debris from entering the lock.

**WARNING**

- When driving with a trailer, the trailer hitch matching the vehicle must be used.
- The trailer hitch of this vehicle is only used to tow the trailer. Please do not use it to get out

**WARNING**

of trouble or rescue the trapped vehicle, so as to avoid damage to the vehicle and even endanger personal safety.

- Removing the trailer hitch

1. Insert the key and turn the lock cylinder counterclockwise. At this time, the knob switch can be pressed down.
2. Press the rotary switch, keep pressing the rotary switch and turn the rotary switch clockwise at the same time until it turns to the red position.
3. Pull out the trailer hitch, turn the key clockwise to lock the trailer hitch, and pull out the key.
4. Put the trailer hitch body into the storage bag and put it in a safe place for storage.

**WARNING**

- Turn the lock cylinder carefully. If it is not locked in the "open position"/ "closed position", it will automatically retract to the original "closed position"/ "open position". At this time, there may be a risk of hand entrapment.

**CAUTION**

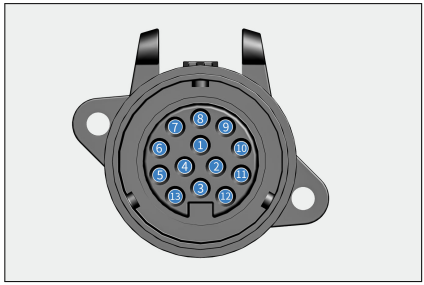
- Do not grasp the lock cylinder as it needs to turn freely
- The key can only be removed when the trailer hitch is fully locked. This condition indicates a successful connection. Do not use the trailer hitch until the key is removed.
- If the trailer hitch is not locked, it will fall out when pulled down.

**CAUTION**

- It is recommended that you write down the key code. This code is required when the key is lost and needs to be replaced.
- During the maintenance of the trailer hitch, the surface should be smeared regularly with a resin-free grease.

- Electrical Connections
  - Trailers are equipped with tail lights, brake lights, side indicators, and turn signals.
  - To power the trailer's lighting, the tow unit is equipped with a built-in 13pin electrical connector.

- When the whole vehicle is stationary, insert the trailer plug into the vehicle electrical connector, and the vehicle automatically enters the driving mode with trailer.




| | |
|---|---|
| 1 | Left turn signal |
| 2 | Rear Fog Light |
| 3 | Pin 1-8 to the ground |
| 4 | Right turn signal |
| 5 | Right tail light |
| 6 | Stop Light |
| 7 | Left tail light |
| 8 | Reversing light |
| 9 | 12 V power supply-permanent |
| 10 | 12V power supply-switch/ignition |
| 11 | Pin 10 to the ground |
| 12 | Reserved (empty) |
| 13 | Pin 9 to the ground |

**WARNING**

- Use only electrical connections designed by BYD. Do not directly splice or otherwise connect the

**WARNING**

trailer's electrical wiring, or the vehicle's electrical system will be damaged, resulting in failure.

**CAUTION**

- Before and while driving with a trailer, the driver shall ensure that all electrical connections and all trailer lights are operational.
- When the electrical connection device is not connected to the towing trailer interface, do not use a high-pressure water gun to directly clean electrical connection device, as it may be damaged by water entering the device.

**Operating instructions for entering the driving mode with trailer**

- Preparations before Connecting
  - Take out the trailer hitch and insert it into the reserved interface from the trunk of the vehicle.
  - The whole vehicle is switched to R gear, and the drag auxiliary function is opened in the panoramic image interface;
  - With the help of the drag assist guide cursor of the reversing image, reverse the vehicle, make the ball joint of the trailer hitch close to the mechanical connection device of the trailer, and get off the vehicle after parking for connection operation.
- Connect the Two Vehicles
  - Connect the two vehicles according to the instructions of the towed vehicle.
  - When the vehicle is stationary and the cable is connected, the vehicle will automatically start the driving mode with trailer.
- Light detection
  - Auto operation: Wait for 15 seconds after the cable is plugged in, and the RV light detection is automatically carried out.
  - Manual operation: Through the multimedia touchscreen →Settings → Driving Control interface, click the signal light automatic detection, and the automatic light detection will start after 15 s.
- When entering the driving mode with trailer, the following driving assistance functions will be disabled. Please drive carefully:

**WARNING**

- Do not connect/disconnect the trailer or cable before the vehicle stops, or hidden safety problems are caused.
- It is recommended to connect or disconnect the cable when the vehicle is powered off to avoid accidental electric shock.

**CAUTION**

- In the driving mode with trailer, the maximum speed will be limited to 110km/h to ensure the safety of users.
- When the tailgate is opened in the driving mode with trailer, the tailgate is only unlocked but not electrically opened.
- The driving mode of the vehicle defaults to comfortable and cannot be switched when entering the driving mode with trailer.
- Disconnect the cable signal plug in the parking state of P gear. In order to ensure the driving safety, it is necessary to switch the vehicle to other gears before

**CAUTION**

the trailer driving mode can automatically exit.

**Indicator icon with trailer status**

- The status indicator located on the gauge.

| Function | Vehicle Status | Light Status | Type |
|---|---|---|---|
| Towing hook | Normal | Solid blue | |
| | Abnormal signal | Solid red | |

- When the trailer cable is not connected, the trailer status indicator icon is off.

**Influence of Trailer Towing on Mileage**

- Traveling with a trailer will increase the weight and drag of the vehicle, thus reducing the mileage. The trip planner adjusts the estimated value based on the user's historical energy consumption during towing (the initial calibration value for the first time), and dynamically adjusts the estimated value according to the user's energy consumption during driving.

**Mitigation of trailer sway**

- When the vehicle detects trailer sloshing, its electronic stability control system will brake moderately to reduce the degree of trailer sloshing. At this time, the ESC indicator on the instrument panel flashes. When the system automatically brakes due to trailer shaking, the brake pedal indicator will still flash until the vehicle is in a stable state.

## Safety Driving Guidelines

**Driving after drinking is strictly prohibited**

Even a small amount of alcohol reduces the reaction capability to different traffic conditions. The more one drinks, the slower he acts to traffic conditions. No driving after drink.

**Speed control**

Speeding is the main cause of car crashes. Generally speaking, the faster the speed, the greater the risk. Please keep a safe speed according to the road traffic conditions.

**Maintaining the vehicle in safe driving condition**

Tire burst or mechanical failure is extremely dangerous. To reduce the possibility of such failure, the vehicle condition should be checked frequently and the specified inspection items should be completed regularly.

**CAUTION**

- Drivers must obtain a driver's license before driving a vehicle.
- Fatigue driving is not allowed.
- Drivers must obey the traffic rules when driving a vehicle.
- When driving, please pay attention to driving. Do not perform operations unrelated to driving (such as answering and calling, adjusting buttons, etc.).

## Suggestions for Vehicle Use

In order to prolong the service life of the power battery, the following suggestions are made:

- Before the vehicle is stored for a long time, it is recommended to discharge to 40% ~ 60% after it is fully charged. The electric quantity should not be too high or too low. Please close the doors and windows when the vehicle is stored.
- When the vehicle is stored for a long time, it is recommended to fully charge and discharge it once every 3 months, and then charge it to 40% ~ 60% for storage.
- When the vehicle is in use, if the SOC indicator bar of the instrument enters the red alert grid, the battery power is insufficient, please charge it in time to avoid long-term use of low power.
- When the vehicle is used, it is recommended to use the on-board charging equipment to fully charge the vehicle once every 1 to 2 weeks.
- When the temperature is high, the vehicle should not be stored at full charge for a long time. It is recommended that the vehicle be discharged to below 95% after it is fully charged.
- When the temperature is very low or very high, it is recommended that the vehicle should not be parked outdoors for a long time.
- When the vehicle is in use, repeated rapid acceleration and deceleration should be avoided as far as possible.
- When the vehicle is in use, it should be avoided for a long period of continuous use, as prolonged operation may cause the battery temperature to become too high, affecting the performance of the vehicle.
- Contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection as soon as possible in the event of the fault prompt.
- The vehicle performance will be limited when the battery temperature is high. Please have the vehicle placed until the battery temperature drops before using it.

**WARNING**

- In low or high temperature environment, the pure electric endurance mileage is reduced compared with normal temperature, and the power performance will be affected.

**CAUTION**

- If the electric mileage displayed by the meter drops to 0, it must be charged. If it is not charged within 7 days, it will cause permanent damage to the battery, and the resulting damage to the high-voltage battery pack will no longer be guaranteed by BYD.
- The driving range depends on the available electricity consumption of the vehicle, the age of the vehicle (current battery life), weather, temperature, road conditions, driving habits, etc.

## Fuel

### Fuel Selection

- The use of correct fuel is the basis for realizing the best performance of the engine, and also the key to

controlling emissions and protecting relevant components.

- Please use 95# and above unleaded gasoline with a required ethanol content of E10 and below.

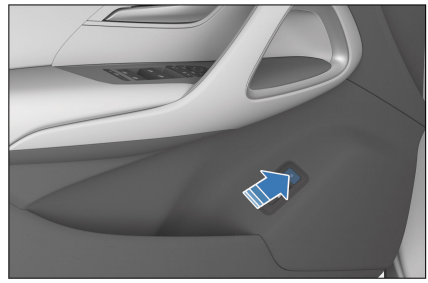
**CAUTION**

- Do not use leaded gasoline. The use of leaded gasoline leads to the failure of the three-way catalytic converter and the malfunction of the control device for exhaust pollution, as well as the increase in maintenance costs.
- The engine damage or excessive emission caused by the use of improper fuel is not covered by the warranty.
- The use of low-grade or inferior gasoline reduces the service life of the engine.

**Refueling**

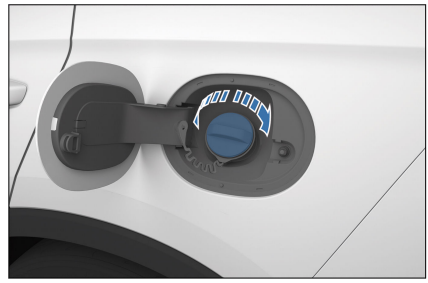
1. The fuel filler flap is located on the left side of the vehicle, so park the vehicle with its left side close to the fuel pump.
2. Open the fuel filler flap

- When the vehicle is in the flameout state (the instrument will prompt "Please refuel in the flameout state" when the vehicle is not flameout), press the pressure relief valve switch, and the instrument will prompt "The fuel tank cap has been unlocked", then the fuel filler cap can be opened.



3. Rotate the fuel tank cap counterclockwise to remove it.

- You may hear a "hiss" sound due to the release of pressure in the fuel tank.
- Connect the fuel tank cap to the fuel filler flap with a tether to prevent inadvertent loss of the cap. While refueling, place the fuel tank cap on the bracket of the fuel filler flap.



4. After refueling, screw up the fuel tank cap clockwise and then close the fuel filler flap.

**CAUTION**

- Check whether the fuel filler flap is tightened and whether the fuel tank cap is closed in time after refueling.
- Fuel filling and charging must be done separately. Do not refuel the vehicle with the charger connected, which should be keep a safe distance away from combustible products including

**⚠ CAUTION**

fuel oil, or it may result in risk of damaged equipment or injuries when the operation of plugging/unplugging charger is not done by rule.

- Stop filling after the filler nozzle is automatically cut off. Do not overfill the fuel tank, so as to leave some space for fuel expansion due to the temperature change.

## Saving Fuel and Extending Vehicle Service Life

- Following easy operations should be taken for extending the service life of the vehicle and saving fuel and repair costs: The followings are some tips for saving fuel and repair costs:
  - Constant speeds save fuel. Sudden acceleration, sharp turning, and emergency braking consume more fuel.
  - Keep a constant speed according to traffic conditions. Each deceleration or acceleration of the vehicle consumes additional fuel.
  - Use cruise control under proper driving conditions.
  - The use of the A/C brings additional load to the engine, resulting in large fuel consumption. Turn off the A/C as far as possible. In nice weather, it is recommended to use the fresh air mode for ventilation.
  - Maintain proper tire pressure. Insufficient tire pressure causes tire wear and fuel waste.
  - Do not load unnecessary weight on the vehicle. Excessive weight brings additional load to the engine, resulting in large fuel consumption.
  - When the engine is in a cold state, do not run at a high speed or drive with the acceleration pedal pressed to a deep position immediately after starting, so as to prevent damage to the engine.
  - Avoid continuous acceleration and deceleration. Frequent stop and start cause fuel waste.
  - Avoid unnecessary parking or braking. Maintain a stable speed and observe traffic lights to minimize the number of stops. When driving on the road without traffic lights, keep a proper driving distance from the vehicle ahead to avoid emergency braking, which may also reduce the brake wear.
  - Do not drive on roads with heavy traffic or traffic jams as much as possible.
  - Do not always put your foot on the brake pedal if unnecessary, because this may cause premature wear, overheating, and consumption of a large amount of fuel.
  - Maintain a proper speed when driving on highways. Higher vehicle speed consumes more fuel. Keep the vehicle speed within the economical range of speed.
  - Keep the front wheels properly aligned. Avoid collision with curbstones and drive slowly on rough roads. An inaccurate front wheel alignment causes excessive tire wear and increases the engine load and fuel consumption.
  - Keep the chassis clean and free of mud. This not only reduces the weight of the vehicle body, but also prevents corrosion.

- Adjust the vehicle to keep it at its best. Such conditions as dirty air filters, much carbon deposit in spark plugs, dirty, deteriorated or viscous engine oil and lubricating oil, and unadjusted brakes worsen the engine performance and waste fuel. Regular maintenance must be carried out to ensure a long service life of all components and reduce operating costs. If the vehicle is often driven under severe conditions, the maintenance interval shall be shortened.

**REMINDER**

- Never coast in "N" while driving.

## Carrying Luggage

- This vehicle features several different spaces for convenient storage of articles.
- The glovebox, side glovebox, and seat back file pockets are designed to store small and light items, while the boot is used to store larger and heavier items.
- Too much baggage or improper loading may affect the performance, stability, and normal running of the vehicle and reduce vehicle safety.
- For loading baggage, the total mass of the vehicle body, all passengers, and baggage shall not exceed the maximum allowable mass.
- Therefore, please read the following contents before loading baggage.

**WARNING**

- Overloading and improper loading affect the maneuverability and stability of the vehicle, and may even result in collision accidents.

**WARNING**

- Observe the total load limits and other loading guidelines in this Manual.
- Do not carry articles with strong magnetism to avoid interference with the normal running of the vehicle.

### Carrying Items in the Passenger Area

- Properly place or fix all articles to prevent them from getting loose and hurting passengers in the vehicle in case of collision.
- Make sure that the articles placed on the floor behind the front seats do not roll under the seat, so as not to affect the driver to operate the pedal or normal adjustment of the seat. Do not stack the articles higher than the backrests of the front seats.
- During driving, always keep the glovebox closed. If the glovebox is open, knees of passengers may be injured in case of collision or emergency braking.

**REMINDER**

- Do not pile up children's toys in the vehicle. Such toys may affect the driving safety, and induce a hazard to the occupants, especially in case of emergency braking or collision.

### Loading Baggage in the Trunk

- Place the baggage evenly on the cargo covert, and put the heaviest baggage at the front bottom as far as possible.
- Secure the articles with ropes or chains to make sure they do not move during

driving. Do not stack the articles higher than the seat backrests.

- If the tailgate cannot be closed due to the carriage of large articles, the vehicle exhaust may enter the passenger area. To avoid carbon monoxide poisoning, please refer to Risk of Carbon Monoxide (CO) Poisoning in this Manual.

**Roof Rack**

- With a roof rack, the energy consumption of the vehicle will increase and your vehicle may have different driving characteristics.
- When installing the roof rack, please read and follow the manufacturer's instructions.
- When loading on the roof crossmember, it is recommended to keep the load evenly distributed and keep the center of gravity low. When loaded, the center of gravity of the vehicle becomes higher and the handling may be different from that without load.
- When driving a highly loaded vehicle, you should take some extra precautions, such as slowing down and increasing the braking distance.
- The maximum recommended load of the luggage rack is: 50 kg. Among them, the load includes the weight of the beam, luggage frame and other accessories mounted on the luggage rack.

**CAUTION**

- The load must not be placed directly on the roof sheet metal. The roof sheetmetal is not designed to place loads.
- To use the function of the roof rack correctly, please place the load on the cross member of the rack.
- Make sure that the load is securely bound, and check that the load is secure before driving and during stops.

## Risk of Carbon Monoxide (CO) Poisoning

- The engine exhaust contains CO gas. If the vehicle is properly maintained, CO may not enter inside during normal driving.
- Check the exhaust system for leakage under the following conditions:
  - The exhaust sound is abnormal.
  - The vehicle has been subjected to accidents that may damage the bottom of the vehicle.

**WARNING**

- CO gas is toxic. Inhalation of CO can result in loss of consciousness and even threat to life. Any enclosed environment and activities that can cause CO poisoning should be avoided.
- High-concentration carbon monoxide gas will quickly concentrate in closed areas, such as garages. Do not start the engine when the garage door is closed. Even if the garage door is open, the running time of the engine should be limited to the extent that the vehicle can be driven out of the garage.
- When the tailgate is opened, airflow will bring the exhaust into

**WARNING**

the vehicle, creating a dangerous environment. If the vehicle must be started with the tailgate open, all windows shall be lowered and the interior air control system shall be adjusted according to the following prompts:

- Select the "Fresh air" mode.
- Select the "Face Level and Foot Level" mode.
- Set the fan speed at "High Speed" .

## Wading into Water

- Before driving into the waterlogged road section, the depth of water accumulation must be ascertained, and the depth of water accumulation shall not exceed the maximum wading height allowed by the vehicle.
- Before driving through a waterlogged road section, turn off the A/C. Then gently press and hold the accelerator pedal to drive through the section at a slow and steady speed.Do not release the pedal midway, or the exhaust back pressure is generated to suck water into the engine and causes serious damage.



- Do not park the vehicle in water, or reverse the vehicle and turn off the engine in water.
- After driving through the flooded area, press the brake pedal several times continuously and gently to evaporate the water on the brake disc, so as to restore normal braking performance as soon as possible.
- Drive carefully as driving through deep water may wet the brakes.

**WARNING**

- It is not recommended to wade at high water level unless necessary.
- If there is any water or mud on the brake disc, it may result in delayed brake reaction and extended braking distance, so attention should be paid to preventing accidents.
- Caution! The ice or water on the brakes must be cleaned.
- Avoid emergency braking as much as possible after driving through waterlogged road stretches.
- No water ingress into the engine is allowed! If the vehicle drives on the waterlogged road. If the vehicle is running on a low-lying and waterlogged road, prevent water ingress into the engine; otherwise, the engine may be seriously damaged. The resulting vehicle fault and damage may not be covered by the warranty.
- When wading at high water level, if the vehicle is in EV mode, do not manually switch to HEV mode, or please avoid automatically switching to HEV mode due to low power, which will cause water intake when the engine starts and cause engine damage.

**WARNING**

- In the process of wading, if it is found that water enters the engine intake pipe or the engine stalls, do not start the engine again, otherwise it may cause damage to the engine.
- After the vehicle is driven through the waterlogged road stretches, the transmission system, driving system, electrical system, and other vehicle components may also be seriously damaged. The resulting vehicle fault and damage may not be covered by the warranty.
- In strong convective weather, try your best to charge the vehicle in sheltered places. If the vehicle is soaked or wades in water beyond the door sill, water may ingress into the high-voltage components. In such a case, please contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider in time for proper detection and handling.
- Do not drive on roads with ponding deeper than half of the tire height.

**Impact of Water Ingress into High-Voltage Components:**

- High-voltage components are electronic devices. After the vehicle is soaked in water, drying the high-voltage components in the sun or air cannot ensure the full evaporation of water.
- Water ingress may also greatly affect the insulation of high-voltage components; at the same time, the conductive substances contained in water may cause internal short circuits of high-voltage components or high-voltage systems. In this case, the safety and service performance of the vehicle may be seriously affected.
- Water ingress into high-voltage components has a great impact on product protection level and withstand voltage performance, which may lead to a great safety risk.

## Fire Prevention

**To effectively prevent vehicle fires, please take the following precautions:**

- Do not place any flammable or explosive materials in the vehicle.
  - In hot summer, the interior temperature of the vehicle parked in the sun can be more than 70°C. If there are lighters, cleaning agents, perfume, and other flammable and explosive materials in the vehicle, it is easy to cause fires and even explosions.
- Make sure the cigarette butt is completely extinguished after smoking.
  - Smoking is not only harmful to health, but also may cause a fire. Cigarettes that not thoroughly put out may cause a fire.
- Contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for regular inspection.
  - Check vehicle wiring, connections, wiring harnesses, insulation, fixed positions regularly. Deal with identified problems promptly.
- Do not modify the vehicle's wiring or install any additional electrical appliances.
  - Installing other electrical appliances (such as high-power audio systems and lights) causes excessive wiring load, resulting in heating of the wiring harness and fires. Improper

modification of electrical appliances and wirings causes abnormal heating and fires due to contact resistance.

- Do not replace fuses with those beyond the rated specification of electrical appliances or with other metal wires.

- Driving precautions:
  - During parking, especially in summer, be sure to check whether there are flammables under the vehicle, such as hay, dead branches, leaves, or wheat straws. It is likely to cause a fire in case of the existence of flammables under the vehicle.
  - During driving, avoid roads with flammables such as dry leaves, wheat straws and weeds as far as possible, or pull over the vehicle in time to check whether there are flammables under the vehicle after passing through such roads. Do not park the vehicle in a place exposed to the sun.
- Always keep portable fire extinguishers on the vehicle and know how to use.
  - Carry fire extinguishers with the vehicle and regularly check and replace them to ensure safety. Be familiar with the use of fire extinguishers, so as to make rapid response to accidents.
- Disconnect the negative cable of the low-voltage battery when the vehicle is being repaired or serviced.

**In the event of a fire in the vehicle, take effective measures in a timely and calm manner to minimize any losses:**

- Generally, there are early signs of a fire, such as abnormal noise and odor in the vehicle body. If any, pull over the vehicle immediately and actively put out the fire according to the actual situation.
- Find out the origin of the fire. In case of any smoke in the front compartment, do not open the hood immediately (because this aggravates the combustion and spread of the fire due to air ingress. There are limited combustibles in the front compartment, so the hood shall be kept closed to control the flames, which is conducive to firefighting).
- Dial 119 (fire emergency number) to notify the authorities and insurance company.
- After the fire brigade put out the fire, ask them for a rescue certificate and statement of fire cause.
- After the accident, contact the insurance company in time for post-accident handling.

**REMINDER**

- In order to mitigate losses in the event of an accident, the purchase of commercial insurance (fire loss, theft, etc.) is recommended.

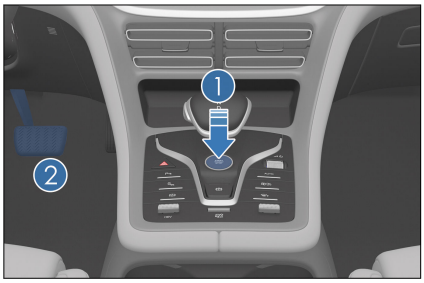
# Starting and Driving

## Starting the Vehicle

**Normal Method for Starting the Vehicle**

- Carry a valid smart key and press the "Start/Stop" button ① while stepping on the brake pedal ②. When the "OK" indicator on the instrument is on, it indicates that the vehicle is in a drivable state.
- Shift to "D" or "R" position, and then the electrical parking brake will be released automatically. You can drive when you hear the release sound

of the electronic hand brake system motor




**The vehicle cannot power on when**

- The vehicle cannot power on when:
  - When the START/STOP button is pressed, if the smart key system warning lamp illuminates, the speaker in the vehicle beeps, and the middle information display on the instrument cluster shows "Key not detected", it indicates that the electronic smart key is not in the vehicle or the interfered vehicle cannot be detected.
  - The key is somewhere unsuitable for detection, such as on the floor, in the cup holder, boot, etc.
- Possible causes for the failure of the normal start function when the "START/STOP" button is pressed:
  - If the electronic smart key does not work, the smart key system warning indicator on the combination instrument flashes, and the message "Low key battery" is displayed on the display screen in the middle of the combination instrument, indicating that the key battery may have run out. Replace the electronic smart key battery as soon as possible with reference to ***P246***.
  - If the engine is started repeatedly in a short period of time, it is necessary to wait for 10s before starting the vehicle.
  - In addition to the above, smart entry and keyless start systems do not work properly in some cases due to the environment in which they are used. See ***P65*** for details.

**Starting the Vehicle in Emergencies**

- Engage the parking brake firmly.
- Turn off all unnecessary lights and accessories.
- Set the gear to "P".
- The power gear is in the "OFF" position.
- Make sure the electronic smart key is inside the vehicle.
- Long press the START/STOP button for more than 15 seconds to start the vehicle.

**REMINDER**

- Do not activate for more than 20 seconds at a time, or the wiring system will overheat.

## Remote Start

**Before Starting**

1. Ensure the vehicle is powered off.
2. The gearshift lever is on "P".
3. Vehicle speed is less than 5km/h.

**Remote Start with the Electronic Smart Key**

- The vehicle can be started by long pressing the “Remote Start/ Flameout" button of the electronic smart key for 2s. After the vehicle is successfully started, the turn signal will flash for 3 times.

- If there is no valid operation within 10 minutes after remote start, the vehicle stops and powers off, and turn signals flash twice.
- Press and hold the remote start/stop button on the electronic smart key for two seconds. The vehicle powers off, and turn signals flash twice.



## Driving the Vehicle

- During driving, energy is recovered through the regenerative brake when the vehicle decelerates. However, do not accelerate or decelerate unnecessarily.
- Users can go to the relevant setting page via the touchscreen to select the corresponding energy feedback mode according to their driving habits.
  - Standard: When the accelerator pedal is released, the motor controller recovers energy in the standard level, and the vehicle deceleration is in the standard level.
  - High: When the accelerator pedal is released, the motor controller recovers more energy, and the vehicle deceleration is high.
- Users can choose the energy feedback intensity according to their needs when releasing the accelerator to experience different senses of deceleration, and obtain different driving pleasures.
- The set accelerator release energy feedback intensity can be memorized. Even after the vehicle is powered off, the mode set last time remains valid when the vehicle is powered on next time.

**CAUTION**

- Do not set the energy regeneration intensity when the vehicle is running at a high speed. This may distract the driver and lead to accidents.

- In HEV mode, the engine automatically starts and stops as needed to charge the battery or provide additional power.
- Vehicle power is lower at low battery SOC than that at high battery SOC.

**Kick-Down Function**

During driving, when the vehicle is going uphill or it is necessary to accelerate rapidly or press the accelerator deeply, almost fully pressing the accelerator increases the pedal resistance and triggers this function, so that the engine speed increases to provide greater power for the vehicle.

**CAUTION**

- Higher battery SOC can ensure sufficient discharge power of the power battery, so that the engine can work normally and a better acceleration experience can be obtained.
- Battery fault, generator fault, and engine fault may affect the Kick-Down power output. Frequent triggering of the Kick-Down function will cause the battery level of the vehicle to drop rapidly.

**Safety Check before Driving**

Before long-distance driving, it is better to conduct a safety check on the vehicle, which will ensure your driving safety and increase your driving pleasure. You can also entrust BYD Automobile Authorized Service Shop to check on your behalf.

**General Exterior Iinspections of Vehicle**

- Tire: check the tire pressure and carefully check whether there are cuts, damages, or foreign matters on the tread, and whether the tires are abnormally or excessively worn. In case of excessive wear or eccentric wear, drive the vehicle to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for four-wheel alignment and relevant inspection as soon as possible.
- Wheel nuts: Confirm whether nuts are loose or missing.
- Leakage: check underneath the vehicle for leakage of fuel, oil, coolant or other liquids (except water droplets from A/C condensation) after the vehicle stops for a while.
- Lighting: Confirm that headlights, position lights, turn signals, and other lighting facilities all work normally. Check the light intensity of headlights.

**General Interior Inspections of Vehicle**

- Seat belt: Check whether the buckle can be fastened. Confirm that the seat belt is not worn or scratched.
- Instrument cluster: confirm that the maintenance indicator, instrument cluster lighting and defroster work normally.
- Brake pedal: confirm that the brake pedal has enough space for movement.
- Low-voltage battery and cables: Check the connector for corrosion or looseness, and check the shell of the battery for cracks.

**Inspections Inside the Hood**

- Spare fuses: verify that spare fuses of all rated charges in the fuse box are available.
- Coolant level: confirm that the coolant level is correct.
- Brake fluid level: confirm that the brake fluid level is correct.
- Fuel pipe: check the pipe for any fuel leakage and loose connections.

**Inspections after Vehicle Startup**

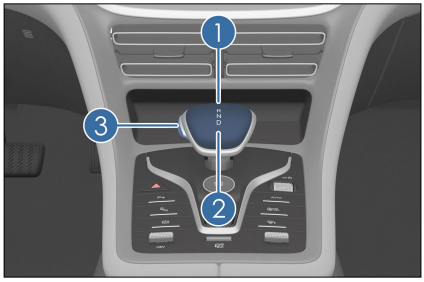
- Exhaust system: listen for leaks. If there are any leaks, repair them immediately.
- Oil Level Gauge: after the engine is warmed up, stop the engine for 10 min, park the vehicle on a flat ground, and check the oil level. See “Engine Oil”.
- Instrument cluster: confirm that the maintenance indicator and speedometer work normally.
- Brake: test the vehicle in a safe place to determine whether the vehicle deflects toward any direction during braking.
- Other abnormalities: check for loose parts, leakage and abnormal noise.

**Preparations before Driving**

- Check the surroundings of the vehicl before getting on the vehicle.
- Adjust the seat position, seat backrest angle, seat cushion height, head restraint height, and steering wheel angle and height.
- Adjust the rearview mirrors.
- Make sure all doors are closed.
- Fasten the seat belt.

## Gearshift Lever

- Gear positions of the transmission are marked on the panel of the gearshift lever, as the figure ② indicates.
- The "P" gear is the parking gear. Press the "P" gear button ①, and the parking indicator on the button will light up to realize parking. Start the vehicle and press the brake pedal to shift the lever from P to another position.
- To ensure safety, depress the brake pedal before shifting out of P gear and shifting into R gear.




**CAUTION**

- To avoid damaging the transmission, press the P gear button only after the vehicle has come to a complete stop.

- Reverse. Shift to R only after the vehicle stops.
- "N": Neutral, used for temporary stop. However, the driver must ensure that the transmission is shifted to P before leaving the vehicle.
- "D": Drive, shift to D position to drive the vehicle normally.
- After successful gear shifting, release the gearshift lever, and it automatically returns to the central position.
- Turn the ignition on before shifting into "D".
- It is necessary to step on the brake at the same time when engaging the "P" gear or switching to the driving gear. For detailed operation, please refer to the instrument prompt.

**WARNING**

- If the vehicle is moved for a long time after the motor is turned off and the "N" gear is engaged, the transmission may be seriously damaged due to the failure of lubrication.
- If the engine or motor is running and the "R"/ "D" gear is engaged, if the vehicle is not required to run, please be sure to step on the brake pedal to stop the vehicle, because even in the idle condition, the driver can still transmit power, and the vehicle may move forward slowly.
- During driving, do not press the accelerator pedal while shifting gears to avoid accidents.
- To avoid accidents, do not shift the gearshift lever to the "R" gear or press the P button during driving.
- It is not recommended to drive the vehicle down the slope in "N" gear or "P" gear, even if the engine or motor is not running.
- To prevent the moving of the vehicle, pull up the EPB after the vehicle stops stably and press the P button.

**Characteristics and precautions of EHS hybrid transmission:**

- EHS hybrid transmission is a newly designed high-performance transmission, which combines the

low fuel consumption of manual transmission with the comfortable operation of automatic transmission.

- In most driving situations, EHS hybrid transmission makes the vehicle smoother and more fuel-efficient when starting and shifting.
- The performance under some specific working conditions is normal. Please use it safely, for example:
  - Procedures for parking on flat ground: Park the vehicle on a suitable road, step on the brake pedal, engage the "P" gear, and the EPB will automatically start. After the indicator light on the instrument changes from flashing to constant light and there is a text reminder "Electronic parking has been started", release the brake pedal, and the vehicle will be in OFF gear.
  - Steps for ramp parking: Step on the brake pedal on the ramp until the vehicle stops completely. After engaging the "P" gear, the EPB will automatically start. After the indicator light on the instrument changes from flashing to constant light and there is a text reminder "Electronic parking has been started", release the brake pedal, and the vehicle will be in OFF gear. When parking facing downhill, turn the steering wheel so that the front wheel is against the curb. When parking facing uphill, turn the steering wheel so that the rear wheel is against the curb.

## Electric Parking Brake (EPB)

Make sure that the Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) is engaged when parking and leaving the vehicle.



### Engaging EPB Manually

Pull the EPB switch to allow the EPB to apply an appropriate parking force. The indicator (Ⓟ) on the instrument cluster flashes and then remains steady, indicating that the EPB is engaged with a text prompt.

**CAUTION**

- The (Ⓟ) flashing indicates the EPB is working. If the vehicle is on a slope, do not release the brake pedal to avoid sliding. Release the brake pedal after the indicator (Ⓟ) stays on.

### Engaging EPB Automatically

This function is designed to improve the vehicle safety. Excessive reliance on or frequent use of the function is not recommended. To ensure safety, make sure that the transmission is shifted to P or the EPB is engaged before leaving the vehicle.

- Switching the power from OK to OFF engages the EPB automatically. The indicator (Ⓟ) on the instrument cluster lights up.
- Press the brake pedal to stop the vehicle and shift into Park. EPB is engaged automatically. Do not release the brake pedal until the indicator

on the instrument cluster Ⓟ stops flashing and becomes steady on and the "EPB activated" message is displayed.

- Step on the brake pedal to stop the vehicle steadily and apply the brake continuously. Open the driver's door when the gear is in "D" or "R". Release the brake pedal after the indicator light Ⓟ on the instrument changes from flashing to constant light and there is a text warning that "electronic parking has been started".

**CAUTION**

- The EPB is not automatically engaged if you switch off the ignition immediately after pressing the EPB switch.

**Releasing EPB Manually**

When the vehicle is powered ON and the gearshift lever is placed in any position other than P (parking gear), press and hold the brake pedal, and press the EPB switch until the indicator on the instrument cluster goes off, indicating that the EPB is released. At the same time, a text prompt reading "EPB released" is displayed.

**CAUTION**

- "P" (park): When the gearshift lever is in this position, the vehicle is in a stable parking state. To ensure safe parking, the EPB, the main parking mechanism of the vehicle, can be released by the EPB switch only in a position other than "P".

**Automatic EPB Release upon Vehicle Start**

- When the vehicle is parked, start the vehicle, press and hold the brake pedal, and shift to D or R from P or N to automatically release EPB. The indicator goes out, and a text prompt reading "EPB released" is displayed.

**CAUTION**

- The brake pedal must always be pressed when shifting gears. Release the pedal only after the intended gear is displayed on the cluster.
- Within several seconds after the vehicle is started, the EPB system performs a power-on self-test (POST). In this process, the EPB system does not respond to any operations.

- With the vehicle started and the gearshift lever placed in the D or R position, manually engaging the EPB and slowly pressing the accelerator pedal to a certain depth releases the EPB automatically, the corresponding indicator Ⓟ goes out, and a text prompt reading "EPB released" is displayed.

**When EPB release fails**

When the manual release of electronic parking is invalid, please keep pressing the EPB switch for more than 10 ~ 12s, and press the EPB switch again within 3 ~ 5s after releasing the switch. If the EPB can be released, please drive to the nearest service provider as soon as possible to check the brake pedal switch signal and related parts and circuits; if it still cannot be released, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider immediately.

### Emergency Braking When Brake Pedal Fails

During driving, if the brake is blocked or fails, press the "P" gear switch continuously for more than 2 s to realize emergency braking.

**WARNING**

- EPB forced braking should be avoided as far as possible. Emergency braking should only be enabled in emergency situations such as foot brake failure or brake pedal obstruction.
- Because EPB cannot exceed the physical limit of road adhesion, using the emergency braking function when passing through curves, dangerous roads, and traffic congestion sections, or driving in severe weather conditions may cause the vehicle to drift, slip or deviate, so attention should be paid to avoid accidents.

**CAUTION**

- In order to ensure the safety of driving, it is necessary to avoid using the "P" gear switch for emergency braking during normal driving. In case of emergency situations such as failure of the power-assisted brake or blockage of the brake pedal, the driver must always maintain control of the vehicle and use the emergency braking function under normal driving conditions.

### EPB System Indicator

- When the vehicle is powered on, if the EPB is engaged, the indicator (Ⓟ) on the instrument cluster stays on.
- If EPB is engaged when the vehicle is powered off, (Ⓟ) on the cluster lights up, and then goes out after 10 seconds.
- When the vehicle is powered on, the EPB system starts self-check. (Ⓘ) turns on and then turns off in about three seconds. If it does not, the EPB or braking system may be faulty. Contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider immediately.

### EPB Operating Sound

- When the EPB is engaged or released, the driver may hear the sound of the EPB motor running.
- After the emergency braking function is activated, if burning smell or abnormal noise appears, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider immediately.

**WARNING**

- To prevent the vehicle from moving, the gearshift is not to be used to replace EPB when parking. EPB must be used instead, and the vehicle must be in "P" gear.
- The EPB switch must not be operated when the vehicle is moving.
- When the EPB is being pulled up or released, press the brake pedal as much as possible to prevent the vehicle from sliding and causing gear jamming when the EPB cannot provide sufficient parking force.
- When the vehicle is on the road surface with low adhesion coefficient such as ice, snow, sand, wet ceramic tile or wet epoxy resin, please avoid parking

**WARNING**

on the ramp as far as possible to avoid sliding accidents.

## Automatic Vehicle Hold (AVH)

Auto Vehicle Hold (AVH): When the moving vehicle needs to wait for a long time, the vehicle automatically enters the parking state and maintains the parking for a long time, such as congestion on the slope, traffic lights and so on.

**Automatic Vehicle Hold (AVH) Stays on**

- When the vehicle is in the "OK" position, press the AVH switch to start the automatic parking function, and the AVH standby indicator Ⓐ on the instrument will light up.
- Press the AVH function switch again to turn off the AVH function.



**Automatic Vehicle Hold (AVH) Being Activated**

- When the AVH standby indicator Ⓐ on the instrument panel is always on, press the brake pedal until the vehicle is stationary (the vehicle speed changes from presence to absence), and the AVH function is activated. At this time, the vehicle enters the automatic parking state, and the automatic parking (AVH) working indicator Ⓐ on the instrument is on.

**CAUTION**

- For AVH to be activated, all conditions of automatic parking function must be met.
  - The driver seat belt is fastened and the door is closed.
  - The intelligent power braking system and the EPB system are trouble-free.
- Pressing the accelerator pedal, switching to the "P" gear or manually pulling up the EPB will exit the AVH active state and return to the AVH standby state.
- The AVH is off by factory default.

**AVH Runs**

- The automatic parking (AVH) function is activated, the vehicle brake lamp and the high brake lamp are on, and the automatic parking (AVH) working indicator Ⓐ on the instrument is always on, and the automatic parking function operates normally.
- After the vehicle is stationary for 10 min, the vehicle will automatically exit the AVH activation state and enter the standby state. The AVH standby indicator Ⓐ on the instrument will light up and the vehicle will automatically switch to "P" gear.
  - To activate the automatic parking (AVH) function, please switch the gear to "D". After the vehicle is running normally, press the brake pedal until the vehicle is stationary (speed from yes to no).

**Automatic Vehicle Hold (AVH) Is Disabled**

- When the Automatic Vehicle Parking (AVH) function is operating normally, the following actions by the driver will cause the vehicle to exit the automatic parking function and automatically switch from "D" to "P":
  - The driver's door is open.
  - Unlock the driver's seat belt.
  - When the vehicle is parked in "D" gear, the EPB is activated.
  - When the brake pedal is released, press the AVH switch to turn off the AVH function.

**Automatic Vehicle Hold (AVH) Is Inhibited**

- Switch to the "R" gear to enter the low-speed moving condition, and then the automatic parking (AVH) function enters the moving condition. When reversing at low speed in "R" gear or driving at low speed in "D" gear switched from "R" gear, the automatic parking (AVH) cannot be activated and remains on standby to facilitate the operation of moving the vehicle.
- After entering the moving condition, press the automatic parking (AVH) switch or control the vehicle speed to exceed 10 km/h to exit the moving condition. At this time, the automatic parking (AVH) function is in the standby state and can be activated normally.

## Driving Precautions

- Slow down when driving against strong winds.
- When driving on the road with curbstone, drive slowly and keep the correct angle as far as possible. Avoid driving on objects with high and sharp edges or other road obstacles. Otherwise, the tire may be seriously damaged.
- Slow down on bumpy or uneven roads or the shock would damage the tires.
- Avoid driving through flooded areas as much as possible.
- When the vehicle is on the road surface with low adhesion coefficient such as ice, snow, sand, wet ceramic tile or wet epoxy resin, please avoid parking on the ramp as far as possible to avoid sliding accidents.

**WARNING**

- The driver should ensure the safety of the passengers in the vehicle, guide the passengers to use the vehicle configuration function correctly, and avoid the wrong operation of children and other passengers in the vehicle.

**REMINDER**

- The battery is located in the vehicle's chassis, so be careful to avoid bumping when driving.
- Before driving, make sure that EPB is fully released and that the EPB indicator light is off.
- Do not leave the vehicle when the drive motor is running.
- Do not rest your feet on the brake pedal and accelerator pedal for a long time during driving. Otherwise, this will cause overheating, wear and waste of electric energy.
- Slow down when driving down long steep slopes. and avoid braking too frequently to prevent disc overheating, which affects brake performance.

**REMINDER**

- Drive with care when accelerating or braking on slick roads. Quick acceleration or sudden braking will cause the vehicle to skid or deviate.
- To avoid traffic accidents, make sure no occupant sticks his head or hands outside the vehicle, specially when there are children in the vehicle.
- Large amounts of water entering the engine compartment can cause damage to the power system and electrical components.

**Winter Driving Precautions**

- Make sure the coolant is freeze-proof.
  - Use coolant of the same type as the one used originally. Fill up coolant into the cooling system based on ambient temperature.
  - Improper coolant will damage the cooling system.
- Check the low-voltage battery and cable conditions.
  - The low-voltage battery's capacity is lower in cold weather, so they must be fully charged when winter comes.
- Avoid the door lock frozen by ice and snow.
  - Spray some deicing agent or glycerin into the door lock hole to prevent icing.
- Use washer fluid containing antifreeze.
  - Such products are available in BYD authorized dealers or service providers and all auto parts stores.
  - The mixing ratio of water and antifreeze shall comply with the manufacturer's instructions.

**CAUTION**

- To prevent damage to the vehicle's paintwork, use a special washer fluid.

- Avoid accumulation of ice and snow under the mudguard.
  - The accumulation of ice and snow under the mudguard may make steering difficult. When driving in cold winter, pull over the vehicle often to check whether there is ice and snow accumulated under the mudguard.
- It is recommended to carry several necessary emergency tools or items according to different road conditions.
  - It is advisable to have snow chains, window scraper, bags of sand and salt, flashing signal, a shovel and connecting cables in the vehicle.

**Winter Tires**

- Winter tires provide better traction on snowy roads. The special rubber tread pattern makes the tires less affected by low temperatures and delivers excellent braking performance to improve driving safety.

**Usage tips**

- It is recommended to use winter tires in snow or ice conditions or at temperatures below 7°C. When temperatures rise to above 7°C, install summer or all-season tires instead for driving safety and better performance.
- Winter tires must be the same size, load index, and speed rating as those originally provided by BYD.

- Winter tires must have adequate tread depth. Tires with a tread depth less than 4 mm do not perform well in winter conditions.
- Winter or summer tires are designed for specific acceleration conditions. Use them in the corresponding seasons to avoid poor traction or braking performance.
- Do not exceed the speed rating of winter tires, which is relatively low.
- After installing winter tires, inflate them to the design pressures.

**Snow Chains**

- Snow chains are for emergencies or areas where they are permitted by laws only.
- Snow chains are to be fitted to the front wheels and extra care is required for driving a vehicle fitted with snow chains on icy roads. Some snow chains may damage the tires, wheels, suspension and body of the vehicle.Therefore, thin snow chains should be selected to provide sufficient free space between the tires and other parts in the wheel cover.
- Please carefully check and read the component assembly drawing and other instructions of the snow chain manufacturer.
- Consult the BYD authorized dealer or service provider from which you purchase the vehicle before you purchase snow tire chains and install them onto the tires.
- After the snow chains are installed, driving speed should be less than 30 km/h on icy and snowy roads.
- In order to minimize wear of wheels and snow chains, do not travel with snow chains on roads without snow.

**REMINDER**

- Do not drive above 30 km/h or the limit speed specified by the snow chain manufacturer, whichever is lower.
- Drive carefully, paying attention to bumps, potholes, and sharp turns that can cause the vehicle to bounce.
- For vehicles with snow chains, avoid sharp turns or braking with locked wheels, and slow down the vehicle before entering a curve to avoid accidents due to loss of control.
- Tires snow chains should be used symmetrically and remove immediately when not in use.

# Driver Assistance

## Driver Assistance systems Instruction

- System functions are divided into driving assistance and safety assistance:
  - Driving Assistance: It provides two kinds of driving assistance functions with different degrees of intelligence, namely, ACC and ICC, to help drivers drive easily.
  - Safety assistance: It provides front, side and rear safety assistance functions to help drivers drive safely.

**WARNING**

- Drivers should carefully read and understand the relevant agreements and supporting

**WARNING**

documents before using the system functions, understand and master the relevant knowledge of using the system in detail (including but not limited to the use guide of the driving assistance system, the general limitations of the driving assistance system, the specific meaning of each driving assistance function, the scope of application and methods of use, precautions, etc.). And strictly follow the relevant operating instructions in the use process, otherwise it may cause accidents, or even lead to property damage, personal injury and death. The Company shall not be liable for any property damage, personal injury or death caused by the driver's failure to comply with this manual, relevant agreements and supporting documents, unless otherwise mandatory by laws and regulations.

- The system cannot replace the driver's attentive driving and accurate judgment. When using the system functions, the driver should ensure that the vehicle is used in accordance with local laws and regulations, and should always hold the steering wheel, keep alert, pay close attention to all kinds of dangerous situations around, and timely intervene or control the vehicle when necessary to ensure safe driving, otherwise it may cause accidents, or even cause property damage and personal injury.
- The control vehicle and related expressions used in this manual are intended to convey in concise language what is relevant to the driver's use of the system.

**WARNING**

However, during the operation of the system, the driver is always the only driving subject of the vehicle. He should continuously monitor and respond to the operation of the vehicle and system, the external environment of the vehicle and related targets, and if necessary, he should immediately intervene and control the vehicle through the operation mode specified in this manual to ensure the safety of driving. Otherwise, it may lead to accidents. It even causes property damage and personal injury.

- The driver shall comply with local laws and regulations to legally use the functions of the driver assistance system, and shall not add functions, App, tools, etc. to the system for any improper or illegal acts, nor shall he illegally collect and use personal information and geographic information data. The Company shall not assume any responsibility for any illegal acts caused by the user's abuse, misuse or unauthorized modification of the system functions and services, and shall have the right to temporarily shut down the system functions or even terminate the provision of services to the user, and shall have the right to retain the data involved in the user's illegal acts so as to provide them as evidence to institutions with legal access procedures.

**CAUTION**

- The driver assistance system is only designed to assist the driver

**CAUTION**

in driving, not an automatic or unmanned driving system. The system cannot replace the driver's attentive driving and accurate judgment. Although the system can provide a certain degree of help, it can not fully cope with all the situations that may occur during driving due to traffic, road conditions, visibility, complex weather and other environmental changes. Therefore, the driver is always the first person responsible for driving the vehicle, and should bear the full responsibility for safe driving in accordance with local laws and regulations.

**Driver Assistance System Sensor**

The system is equipped with millimeter wave radar, camera and other sensors.

**Sensor cleaning and maintenance**

- The driver shall ensure that all radars and cameras are clean and that the front windscreen is clean and free from frost or fog. Dirt, obstructions, or attachments on the radar or camera surface, or dirt, frost, or fog on the front windshield may affect the function or performance of the system.
- When the radar or camera is blocked or dirty, the instrument display screen or central control screen may display the corresponding text prompt, and the driver can clean and maintain accordingly. Contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

**Common radar or camera occlusion or dirty scenes and corresponding treatment suggestions**

- When the radar or camera window surface is frozen or frosted, it is recommended to clean it with warm water or cleaning solution containing antifreeze until it melts, and then wipe the surface with dry optical wiping cloth, cotton cloth and flannelette until there is no obvious stain left on the window surface.
- Dust, mud spots (including silt and water stains), bird droppings and other stains on the surface of the radar or camera window are recommended to be washed with flowing water or special cleaning agent for windows until the dirt is softened or falls off, and then the surface dirt is wiped clean with dry optical wiping cloth, cotton cloth and flannelette until there is no obvious stain left on the window surface.
- If there is water stain or natural condensation on the surface of radar or camera window, it is recommended to wipe it with dry optical wiping cloth, cotton cloth and flannelette until there is no obvious water stain on the surface of the window.
- It is recommended to drive the vehicle away from the current scene as soon as possible when the vehicle is running on the unilateral viaduct, tunnel, desert, grassland or snow and other scenes with poor light or easy occlusion. When the occlusion disappears, this kind of occlusion fault will be eliminated without further treatment.

**Cleaning and maintenance tips**

- When the window is fogged or there is a risk of fogging, it is recommended to turn on the window defogging function to prevent the glass from fogging or frosting.
- It is recommended to use a mild cleaning agent (such as soapy water) to clean stains on the radar. After cleaning, spray the radar surface with

clean water first, and then wipe the radar surface with clean dust-free cloth.

- Do not carry out operations such as film sticking, waxing, re-spraying with non-original paint, vehicle coat sticking or plating on the external area of the radar, otherwise the radar perception performance will be affected.
- Do not use the cleaning brush to clean radar or camera to avoid the abrasion of the window and shell caused by the sand mixed in the cleaning brush.
- Do not use hot water to remove ice and snow from the window to prevent the window from breaking.
- Do not wipe the window vigorously to avoid damaging the optical coating of the window.
- Do not use metal or other hard objects to scrape the contaminants or ice and snow on the surface of the window and shell, so as not to damage the surface of the window.
- When washing the vehicle body with high-pressure water, please try to avoid washing the radar and camera directly.
- The millimeter-wave radar is installed in the front and rear bumpers respectively. Therefore, in order to avoid affecting the performance of the millimeter-wave radar, please keep the bumper clean. Do not paint, surround, or install metal or alloy (including electroplating process) decorative parts on the bumper without permission.

**Sensor limitations**

- Radar and cameras have (but are not limited to) the following limitations:
  - Radar and cameras have blind spots in the detection of the surrounding environment.
  - Radar and cameras can misdetect, such as incorrectly identifying the distance or speed of an object, or incorrectly detecting an object when there is no object.
  - Radar and cameras may miss detection, such as only partially or completely recognizing certain vehicles, people, animals, or other obstacles.
- Many factors can affect the performance of a sensor, resulting in false or missed detections. Please refer to ***P138***and read the following information carefully and observe it strictly.

**WARNING**

- It is strictly prohibited to use strong alkali, strong acid, ammonia-containing cleaning solvent, bleaching agent, cement killer, asphalt cleaning agent, glue remover, polishing agent or paint remover to clean optical window and shell.
- If you need to replace the radar or camera, please go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider. Do not install or use parts not approved by BYD or make modifications not approved by BYD.
- If the front windshield and bumper need to be replaced, please contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider to ensure proper disposal of radar and camera.
- If the area where the sensor such as radar and camera is installed is

**WARNING**

damaged or collided, the sensor may be offset or damaged, and the system may not be available. Contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for handling.

- After the sensors such as radar and camera are replaced, they should be calibrated in time according to this manual. An unsuccessful calibration may affect the proper operation of the system.
- Violation of the above operation will affect the driver's safe driving, may cause accidents, and even cause property damage, personal injury and death.

**General Limitations of Driver Assistance Systems**

With the application of multi-sensor fusion algorithm, many factors will affect the performance of the auxiliary driving function, which will lead to its failure to achieve the desired function. Common limiting factors include but are not limited to the system's own equipment problems (including those caused by driver's misoperation), environmental impacts (weather, road environment, etc.), impacts of surrounding vehicles and other traffic participants, including but not limited to the following factors:

**Equipment factors of the system itself (including human use reasons)**

- Millimeter-wave radar and camera are not calibrated, damaged, and the surface is covered with foreign matters (such as ice, snow, water, frost, mud, dust and other objects).
- In the environment with strong reflective objects (such as traffic signs on the highway, metal fences, reflective water on the road, etc.).
- In case of the following circumstances, please go to the official authorized store of BYD Automobile to carry out professional calibration and confirmation of the forward-looking camera, including but not limited to:
  - Dismantle the front view camera or front windshield washer.
  - Four wheels have been re-aligned due to wheel deviation.
  - The vehicle sensor is abnormal or the vehicle structure is abnormal due to the occurrence of scratches, collisions, etc. Especially, the bumper, front windshield and frame are deformed or damaged due to vehicle collision or other reasons, resulting in the change of sensor installation position.
- If a coupling is fitted or if a load protrudes from the vehicle's surroundings.
- Disturbance or obstruction caused by an object that is self-mounted to the rear of the vehicle, such as a bicycle rack.
- Obstruction caused by excessive paint (change in paint thickness) or adhesive products (such as tape, stickers, clothing, etc.) applied or affixed to the vehicle.
- The system may not always achieve the optimum level of performance under the following circumstances, including but not limited to:
  - Excessive wear of brake pads or abnormal brake system.
  - Tires are not properly inflated or excessively worn.
  - Non-conforming tires are installed.
  - Snow chains are installed.

- Use of a small spare tire or tire repair kit.
- When the vehicle is heavily loaded.

**Use of environmental impact factors**

- If the vehicle runs on special roads such as circular parking lot and tunnel for a long time, the radar may have temporary functional failure due to the limitation of detection characteristics, and the function will be restored after leaving the current special road.
- Reaching or leaving a curve may delay or disturb target selection. Under these circumstances, the vehicle will likely slow down unexpectedly or with a delay.
- On roads with sharp curves (such as serpentine roads) or when the curvature of the road curve is too large, the vehicle in front may be lost within a few seconds due to the limitation of the sensor field of view, which may cause the vehicle to accelerate automatically.
- For stationary or slow-moving objects, such as vehicles, the end of traffic flow, toll stations, motorcycles, bicycles or pedestrians, the system may not be able to accurately identify them, and there is a risk of collision, which requires drivers to pay attention to the surrounding situation of vehicles at all times.
- If the vehicle is in a special driving mode such as trailer/snow/mud/sand/mountain, the system function cannot be activated.
- Detection may be affected or delayed in some environments. If the front mmWave radars cross section of the target (a bicycle, three-wheelers, four-wheeler, or motorized bicycle, or motorcycle, for example) is too small, the system may not be able to establish its distance, resulting in either late or no response to those vehicles.
- In extreme weather such as rain, snow, haze and fog, ice and slippery bends.
- Poor visibility of the surrounding environment, such as smoke, splashing water, dust, exhaust emissions from surrounding vehicles, etc.
- The lane line is excessively worn or blocked, covered or disappeared, the old and new markings overlap, and the temporary adjustment or change is rapid due to road construction.
- Strong light (due to oncoming headlamp light or direct sunlight, etc.), dim light (such as dawn, dusk, night).
- An extreme contrast of light, such as the entrance or exit of a tunnel.
- Extremely high or low temperatures.
- If a weight limit sign is not standardized and does not meet the size requirements specified by the state, it may be misidentified as a speed limit sign by TSR.
- If a speed limit sign is unclear or distorted, inclined, reflective, partly blocked or covered, the camera may be unable to recognize the sign completely or clearly.
- Complicated road conditions, such as steep slopes, sharp curves, continuous curves, winding paths, narrow roads, off-road roads, rough roads or roads with grooves, pits (such as fire pits), roads with downward steps or cliffs on one side, raised shoulders, super-wide lanes, construction areas (such as areas where cones are arranged) or vehicle access ramps, intersections, gates, etc.
- Poor road conditions, such as slippery or soft road surface (road surface water, ice, snow or mud road, gravel

road, sand road, etc.), lane lines or road signs are not clear, damaged, etc.

**Impact of surrounding vehicles and other traffic participants**

- Pedestrians are obscured by other objects.
- The typical profile of pedestrians are indistinguishable from the background.
- Short-distance non-motor vehicles, including but not limited to two-wheeled vehicles, tricycles, bicycles, motorcycles, other short-distance carts, baby carriages, shopping carts, small animals and pedestrians (especially children).
- Special-shaped vehicles (such as engineering vehicles, large trucks, road maintenance vehicles, vehicles loaded with reinforced concrete pipes and other items outside the vehicle, etc.), rollover vehicles, vehicles with serious abnormal size, etc.
- There are atypical objects with irregular shapes nearby, such as transparent stools, tables and chairs, water horses, ice cream cones and other obstacles that are difficult to be identified by the system.
- A large number of vehicles with a single background color too close to each other.
- The traffic situation is complex, such as encountering vehicles, pedestrians, cyclists, small animals or other obstacles that suddenly appear and quickly approach their own vehicles, or vehicles entering and leaving ramps, intersections, toll stations, etc.

**WARNING**

- The position of the sensor may change or be damaged after the vehicle is scratched or collided (including minor collision). Do not use the auxiliary driving function. You can go to the authorized service agency of BYD Automobile for maintenance.
- For safety reasons, please try not to use the assistance driving function in bad weather conditions or in poor lighting conditions.
- For safety reasons, please do not intentionally test the driving assistance function, such as not taking action in case of emergency, waiting for the driving assistance function to be triggered, etc.
- Please read the instructions of each sub-function carefully to avoid function exit or dangerous situations caused by improper operation. For example, when the automatic emergency braking function is activated, the system will respond to the acceleration request without triggering the emergency braking.
- Due to system limitations, driver assistance systems may generate inappropriate warnings or interventions while monitoring the surrounding environment. The driver assistance system may also give false warnings due to incorrect understanding of the driver's operation, and the driver should always be vigilant.
- Due to the limitation of the system, the assistance driving system is unable to accurately detect and respond to emergencies in the surrounding environment at present. The

**WARNING**

driver should always be vigilant and intervene or control the vehicle (such as deceleration, braking, steering, etc.) in time when necessary to ensure driving safety. Violation of the above operation may cause accidents and even lead to casualties.

## Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

- Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)The Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) system, an extension of traditional cruise control, uses a front mmWave radar and a front camera to detect the relative distance and speed of a vehicle ahead, and controls the speed of the own vehicle according to the following distance and target cruise speed set by the driver, so as to achieve the purpose of adaptive cruise. If the front of the vehicle is clear, the ACC will maintain the set cruising speed and drive forward. If a vehicle is detected in front, the vehicle will adjust its speed according to the following time set by the driver to follow the vehicle in front.

**CAUTION**

- The driver can activate ACC by pressing the key on the steering wheel. See "ACC Activation Mode" for details.
- ACC function can only assist the driver in cruise control, but it still requires the driver to actively control the steering wheel to ensure the correct direction of the vehicle.

**ACC functional status**

- ACC enable status: If the ACC activation conditions are met, the driver can activate the ACC function through the button on the steering wheel; if the ACC activation conditions are not met, the driver tries to activate the ACC function, and the human-machine interface will prompt that the function is not available.
- ACC activation state: The system can drive at a constant speed at the set target cruising speed or actively adjust the distance from the target vehicle in front to stabilize the vehicle-following driving. If the driver depresses the accelerator pedal while ACC is active, ACC ceases to control the vehicle, allowing the vehicle to respond to the driver's acceleration until the driver releases the accelerator pedal.
- ACC fault state: At this time, the ACC function cannot be used. If the driver tries to activate the ACC function, the man-machine interface will prompt that the function is not available.

| Functional status | Icon | Display status | Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| ACC enable status |  | Light up | ACC is on but not active and has not been active during this power-up cycle |
| ACC enable status |  | Light up | ACC is on and can be activated and has been activated in this power-up cycle (the |

| Functional status | Icon | Display status | Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| | | | icon shows the cruise speed set when it was last activated and exited) |
| ACC Activation State |  | Light up | The ACC function has been activated (the currently set cruising speed is displayed in the icon) |
| ACC fault state: |  | Light up | ACC is currently in a fault state and the function cannot be used. |

**Activate the ACC function.**

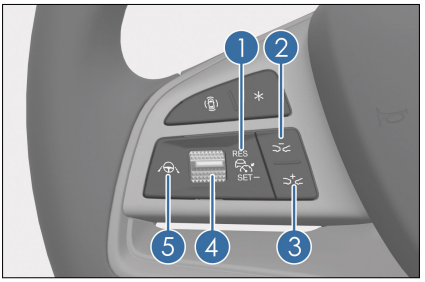
- ACC activation conditions
  - EPB does not pull up.
  - The vehicle is in "D" gear.
  - The vehicle does not slide backwards.
  - The tailgate, hood, and all doors are closed.
  - Driver seat belt is fastened.
  - The ESC system is not switched off.
  - The ego vehicle speed is ⩽150km/h.
  - It is activated when the vehicle is stopped (vehicle speed is 0), when the driver presses the brake pedal, or when the automatic parking function is activated.
  - It can be activated when the driver does not press the brake pedal when the vehicle is running (the vehicle speed is greater than 0).
  - No vehicle network communication fault prompt is displayed on the instrument cluster.
  - The AEB function is not activated.

**CAUTION**

- ACC is suitable for use on highways and roads in good conditions, rather than on complex urban roads or mountain roads.

**ACC activation mode**

- During the power-on cycle of the vehicle, when the function is used for the first time, the ACC function can only be activated by pressing key ① or key ⑤. During each power-on cycle of the vehicle, when the ACC is not used for the first time, the ACC function can also be activated by pressing the button ④.




- Activate the ACC function by pressing the key ① or ⑤, and the system will actively set the current vehicle speed as the target cruising speed (if the current vehicle speed is less than 30 km/h, the target cruising speed will be set as 30 km/h); activate the ACC function by pressing the up key ④,

and the target cruise speed will be set as the vehicle speed set before the function was exited last time.

**WARNING**

- ACC cannot actively adjust the driving speed based on road conditions and driving conditions. Drivers should set the target speed according to local traffic laws and regulations and actual road conditions, and adjust it in time when the situation changes, so as to ensure safe driving all the time.

**Set target cruise speed**

- When the function is activated, the target cruising speed can be set within the range of 30-150km/h by moving the button ④ up or down. When the button ④ is toggled up for a short time, the target cruising speed increases by 5km/h for a single time; when the button ④ is toggled down for a short time, the target cruising speed decreases by 5km/h for a single time; when the button ④ continues to be toggled up for a long time, it increases by 1 km/h continuously; and when the key ④ continues to be toggled down for a long time, it decreases by 1 km/h continuously.

**WARNING**

- The ACC may not immediately reduce the vehicle speed to the desired value. Do not rely too much on cruise control to reduce the vehicle speed sufficiently.
- The driver should always be vigilant, pay close attention to all possible dangerous situations around, and timely intervene or control the vehicle (such as appropriate deceleration, braking, steering, etc.) to ensure safe driving. Violation of the above operation will affect the driver's safe driving, may cause accidents, and even cause property damage, personal injury and death.

**Set following distance**

- The driver can reduce or increase the following time interval between the vehicle and the following target by pressing the keys ② and ③. In each gear, the faster the speed, the greater the distance between the vehicle and the vehicle in front.
- ACC shall adjust the response by decreasing and increasing the time interval in the order of gears 1 to 4. The default following distance is the third gear.

**Cruise Control (CC) System**

- ACC will assist the driver to control the vehicle to cruise at the set speed when the front vehicle is not detected to obstruct the driving of the vehicle.

**Cruise with the car**

- ACC will assist the driver to control the vehicle to keep a safe distance, follow the vehicle in front, and support the operation of acceleration, deceleration, parking and starting of the vehicle in front.
- When following cruise, the instrument display will highlight the following front vehicle in blue. The following distance is related to the vehicle speed, the following time and the gear, and is not a fixed value. (See "Setting the following time")
- In the process of car-following cruise, ACC will assist the driver to adjust the speed and update the car-following target when the car-following target is

cut out or other vehicles are cut in. If there is no new car-following target, constant speed cruise will be carried out.

**Follow-to-Stop/Start**

- Controlled by ACC, the vehicle can stop when the vehicle ahead stops in normal driving conditions.
  - Follow and stop the vehicle in front for a short time (⩽2.5 minutes), and the vehicle can actively follow the vehicle in front to start.
  - In case of long time following and stopping (2.5 minutes <following and stopping time ⩽3 minutes), the driver shall press the accelerator pedal or dial the ACC cruise button ④ to confirm the start.
  - If the following and stopping time is too long (> 3 minutes), the ACC function will actively exit and activate the electronic parking brake. At this time, the driver needs to release the electric parking brake and press the brake pedal to complete the activation of ACC at rest.

**WARNING**

- Drivers should set the target speed and following time according to local traffic laws and regulations and actual road conditions, and adjust it in time when the situation changes, so as to ensure safe driving all the time.
- ACC cannot handle the oncoming vehicle.
- When the ego vehicle is too close to the vehicle or pedestrian in front, ACC may not be able to correctly identify the target.
- When cruising on a curve, the vehicle may follow the wrong target, causing the vehicle to travel at a speed other than its intended speed or in a direction other than its intended direction of travel. The driver should concentrate on driving and control the vehicle correctly in time when he finds the following error.
- Do not rely too much on the speed adjustment and following time adjustment of the following cruise function to maintain an accurate and safe following distance to avoid collision. It is the driver's responsibility to determine and maintain a safe following distance.
- Pressing the function activation button or releasing the brake pedal after pressing it hard while the vehicle is parked and waiting for driving will cause the vehicle to exit ACC, which may cause the vehicle to move forward suddenly due to idling, thus causing an accident. Please always pay attention to the system prompts and the driving environment. In case of idle driving, please correct and actively control the vehicle in time to ensure safe driving.
- The driver should always be vigilant, pay close attention to all possible dangerous situations around, and timely intervene or control the vehicle (such as appropriate deceleration, braking, steering, etc.) to ensure safe driving. Violation of the above operation will affect the driver's safe driving, may cause accidents, and even cause property damage, personal injury and death.

**Active Acceleration/Deceleration While ACC Is Activated (Also applicable to ICC function)**

- The driver can set through the multimedia touchscreen → Settings ⚙ → ADAS → Driving Assist → Step on the accelerator pedal to adjust the cruise speed, set the switch status of the function, which is off by default.
- When ACC is active, the driver can accelerate by actively pressing the accelerator pedal. During the process of pressing the accelerator pedal, the driver assistance system cannot brake.
- The current vehicle speed can be increased quickly by means of the accelerator pedal, and the setting value of the cruising speed can be increased when the accelerator pedal is released.
- If the accelerator pedal is depressed until the real-time vehicle speed is greater than setting value of the target cruising speed, when the accelerator pedal is released, the setting value of the target cruising speed is equal to the real-time vehicle speed when the acceleration pedal is released.
  - If the target cruise speed is greater than 80 km/h, the cruise speed setting is not updated when the accelerator pedal is released after acceleration.
  - If the target cruising speed is less than 80km/h and the real-time speed after acceleration is greater than 80km/h, set the cruising speed to 80km/hwhen the accelerator pedal is released.
  - If the target cruising speed is less than 80km/h and the real-time speed after acceleration is <80km/h, set the cruising speed to the current real-time speed when the accelerator pedal is released.
- If you press the accelerator pedal and press down the key ④, the current vehicle speed will be set as the target cruising speed.
- Move the lever ④ upward to increase the target cruise speed. Press the button for a short time to accelerate 5km/h at a time, and press the button for a long time to accelerate 1 km/h continuously. If the vehicle speed is greater than 155 km/h or the accelerator pedal is continuously pressed for more than 5 minutes, the ACC function will exit.

**Exiting ACC**

- When the function is activated, if the vehicle is not stationary, the function can be exited by pressing the key ① or actively pressing the brake pedal; if the vehicle is stationary, the function can only be exited by pressing the key ①.

**Avoid overtaking in the slow lane (also applies to ICC function)**

- The function of avoiding overtaking in the slow lane is only effective when the ACC function is activated and the speed of the vehicle reaches more than about 90 km/h.
- The driver can set through the multimedia touchscreen → Settings ⚙ The driver can set the switch state of the function through the central control screen → ADAS → driving assistance → avoiding overtaking in the slow lane, and the default function of the system is off.
- When the function switch is turned on, when the vehicle is running in the slow lane and the speed of the vehicle in the adjacent fast lane is slower than that of the vehicle, the system will actively control the vehicle to reduce the speed and try to avoid overtaking the vehicle in the adjacent fast lane.

**Curve Speed Reduction (also applies to ICC function)**

- The curve speed reduction only works when the ACC function is active.
- The driver can set through the multimedia touchscreen → Settings → ADAS → Safety Assist → Curve Speed Reduction, which is off by default.
- After the function is turned on, when the vehicle is about to enter the curve in the ACC activated state, the system will reduce the speed to the appropriate speed in advance according to the curvature of the curve to assist the driver to pass through the curve, so as to improve the driving safety and comfort.

**System Limitations**

- ACC function external sensor
  - The front millimeter-wave radar and camera are installed in the front area of the vehicle, and its field of vision is blocked by the cover, which will interfere with the expected function, especially when the sensor is completely covered, the system will exit. The system will transmit the information of system exit to the driver through the man-machine interface. System function will recover after blockage is removed and the vehicle is restarted or runs for a while.
  - Detection may be affected or delayed in some environments. If the front mmWave radars cross section of the target (a bicycle, three-wheelers, four-wheeler, or motorized bicycle, or motorcycle, for example) is too small, the system may not be able to establish its distance, resulting in either late or no response to those vehicles.
  - If the vehicle is driven for a long time in special road conditions such as circular parking lot and tunnel, the front millimeter wave radar may have temporary functional failure due to the limitation of detection characteristics, and the function will be automatically restored after leaving the current special road.
  - Millimeter-wave radar is interfered by other millimeter-wave radar sources, which leads to failure or misrecognition.
  - Metal objects, such as rail or metal plates used in road construction, may interfere with front mmWave radars, making it malfunction.
  - Detection may also be affected by noise or electromagnetic waves, resulting in delays or interference.
  - Performance of front mmWave radar sensors and cameras may be affected by vibration or collision. Contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for handling.
- Reaching or leaving a curve may delay or disturb target selection. In such cases, the ACC vehicle will likely not decelerate as expected or will decelerate late.
- On roads with sharp curves, such as winding roads, the vehicle ahead may be out of ACC sensor detection for several seconds due to sensor vision limitations, possibly causing the vehicle to accelerate automatically.

**WARNING**

- ACC can not deal with complex bends such as sharp bends and continuous bends. Drivers still need to observe the road conditions ahead at all times and

**WARNING**

control the speed or apply brakes in time when necessary.

- The driver should make a comprehensive judgment and adjust the following distance according to the traffic flow ahead and the current environmental conditions around the road, and set the ACC reasonably. After the ACC system is reasonably set, the driver should make sure that the vehicle can be decelerated to stop at any time.
- ACC may not be able to accurately identify stationary or slow-moving objects, such as vehicles, the end of traffic flow, toll stations, motorcycles, bicycles or pedestrians, and there is a risk of collision, requiring drivers to pay attention to the surrounding conditions of vehicles at all times.
- ACC system can only achieve limited braking instead of emergency braking.

**WARNING**

- ACC does not belong to collision warning or collision avoidance system, and can not replace active safety auxiliary functions such as anti-collision warning and anti-collision braking. It is strongly recommended that drivers always turn on various active safety assistance functions such as anti-collision warning and anti-collision braking (see the chapter on Safety Assistance).
- ACC can not deal with all obstacles such as pillars and stone piers. Drivers still need to observe the road conditions ahead at all times and control the speed or apply brakes in time when necessary.

**WARNING**

- Do not rely too heavily on the ACC to slow the vehicle sufficiently to avoid a collision. Drivers still need to observe the road ahead at all times, and control the speed or apply brakes in time when necessary.
- When there is a target ahead that may cause a collision risk, the vehicle may not be able to avoid the collision, especially when there is a stationary target ahead or the speed of the vehicle is higher than 80 km/h.
- The driver should always be vigilant, pay close attention to all possible dangerous situations around, and timely intervene or control the vehicle (such as appropriate deceleration, braking, steering, etc.) to ensure safe driving. Violation of the above operation will affect the driver's safe driving, may cause accidents, and even cause property damage, personal injury and death.

- ICC cannot be activated when the vehicle is in any special driving mode (Trailer/Snow/Mud/Sand/Mountain mode).
- ACC and its related functions may not work properly or quit when ACC encounters, but is not limited to, the scenarios mentioned below:
  - The ego vehicle status problems (including but not limited to improper operation by the driver)
    - The vehicle speed is higher than 155km/h.
    - Any door, front and rear covers of the vehicle are not closed or faulty.

- Abnormal tire pressure of the vehicle.
- The vehicle airbag is abnormal.
- The vehicle is in one of the following states: Gear other than "D", braking, Hill Descent or Hill Start Assist or Traction Control activated, collision, powered off.
- The vehicle chassis, braking system, traction control system and body electronic stability system have failed or need to be repaired.
- The driver's seat belt is not fastened.
- The driver assistance system is faulty or requires repair.

- External environmental impact (including but not limited to the following weather, visibility, road environment and other factors)
  - Scenes with poor visibility such as night, rain/snow/fog, dust/no street light/dark light/ backlighting/glare.
  - Road gap, intersection, narrow road, steep slope.
  - Mountain roads, country roads.
  - Waterlogged, frozen and snow-covered road sections.
  - Sharp bends, serpentine bends, winding mountain roads and other large curvature bends.
  - Mud road, gravel road, cross-country road and other non-paved roads.
  - There are low, static or close obstacles such as road edges.
- Impact of surrounding vehicles and other traffic participants (including but not limited to the following factors)
  - Congested intersection.
  - Pedestrians and cars pass through the intersection at will.
  - Pedestrians, cyclists, animals and so on suddenly rush out of the blind area of vision.
  - The front car braked suddenly.
  - The adjacent cart drives into bike lane.
  - Pedestrians or other vehicles are forced to jam, grab the road, cross obliquely at a large angle or even retrograde.
  - When encountering special-shaped vehicles (large carts, engineering vehicles, road maintenance vehicles, vehicles loaded with reinforced concrete pipes and other items outside the vehicle, etc.), stationary vehicles, rollover vehicles, etc.
  - The front vehicle/side front vehicle opens the door or there is an object falling from the vehicle.
- Other issues
  - Including but not limited to: Scenarios mentioned in General Limitations.

**WARNING**

- The ACC function is only a driving assistance function, and the precautions only include the common conditions that affect the adaptive cruise function. In addition, there may be other factors that may also affect the performance of the function. The driver should always observe the surrounding situation.
- Use ACC based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.

**CAUTION**

- ACC cannot be activated when the electronic body stability system is not on.
- ACC is suitable for use on highways and roads in good conditions, rather than on complex urban roads or mountain roads.
- It is the driver's responsibility to keep distance from the vehicle ahead. The ACC following time set by the driver shall meet the minimum vehicle distance requirements in the driving environment of the country.
- When ACC is working, if the driver steps on the accelerator pedal or brake pedal, the vehicle will be controlled by the driver. At this time, the driver should pay attention to keeping a safe distance from the vehicle in front.
- ACC may have no or slow responses to a vehicle ahead that brakes or stops suddenly, resulting in a risk of late braking.
- Step on the brake pedal on the slope until the vehicle stops completely. After engaging the "P" gear, the EPB will automatically start. In some cases (the speed of the vehicle in front is too slow relative to the vehicle, the lane change of the vehicle is too fast, or the safety distance between the vehicle in front and the vehicle is too small, etc.), the system may not have enough time to reduce the relative speed, and the system cannot give a warning in time in every case. The driver must react appropriately and in a timely manner in this situation.

**CAUTION**

- If ACC is activated with the vehicle stationary, the system identifies any stationary obstacle ahead and keeps the vehicle still to ensure a safe startup and prevent collision with the stationary target caused by unexpected starting. However, this function does not cover all obstacles, so the driver must be alert.
- If the distance between the vehicle with ACC activated and the adjacent lane is too small (or the vehicle in the adjacent lane is too close to its own lane), it may happen that ACC reacts to the vehicle and brakes.
- If another vehicle changes to the lane on which the vehicle with ACC activated is running and falls within the detection range of the front view camera, it may be recognized as a target vehicle, and a response may be triggered correspondingly. In this event, forced braking or late braking may occur.
- When the ACC cannot identify the vehicle ahead as the target vehicle (no target is highlighted on the instrument), the driver is required to maintain control of the vehicle.
- In rare cases, the system will not be able to identify the rear of the vehicle in front (such as the rear axle of a truck with a high chassis or the bumper of a vehicle) when following the vehicle in front to a stop. The system may not guarantee a proper following distance and the driver must be alert and ready to brake at all times.

**CAUTION**

- Modifying the vehicle structure, such as lowering the chassis, may affect the ACC system.
- Do not use the ACC when driving on roads with poor visibility, ramps, and multiple curves, or slippery and wet roads with snow, ice, and water gathered.
- In case of the following circumstances, please go to the official authorized store of BYD Automobile to carry out professional calibration and confirmation of the forward-looking camera, including but not limited to:
  - Dismantle the front view camera or front windshield washer.
  - Four wheels have been re-aligned due to wheel deviation.
  - A collision happens.
  - It is found that ACC system performance declines or a system error notification is displayed on the cluster.

## Intelligent Cruise Control (ICC)

- ICC can control the vehicle to drive along the current lane within the speed range of 0-150km/h, which is mainly suitable for road scenes with clear lane lines and good road conditions. When using ICC, the driver needs to control the driving route by himself. When the function is activated, the driver needs to keep the steering wheel at all times and take active control of the vehicle manually if necessary.
- ICC detects the driving environment in front of the vehicle through sensors such as radar and camera, and assists the driver to control the driving direction and speed of the vehicle on this basis, so that the vehicle can keep driving in the current lane on the basis of ACC function.
- The ICC only assists the driver in controlling the vehicle along the current lane and does not assist in controlling the navigation route of the vehicle. When the user uses ICC, the driver needs to hold the steering wheel all the time. The driver should actively control the steering wheel when he needs to adjust the driving route, and pay attention to the instrument screen prompt and sound prompt, so as to be ready to actively control the vehicle at any time, so as to ensure the correct and safe driving of the vehicle. The driver's hands leaving the steering wheel for more than specified time will trigger the driver's motion departure warning.

**ICC icon meaning**

| Icon | Display status | Meaning |
|---|---|---|
|  | Light up | ICC is on but not active |
|  | Light up | ICC is active and in use |
|  | Light up | ICC failure, cannot be used |

**WARNING**

- When the ICC function is activated, the vehicle may not be able to stabilize immediately. Drivers should hold the steering wheel all the way to ensure that the vehicle runs safely in the current lane, pay close attention to the driving situation of the vehicle, and intervene or control manually in time when necessary.
- When activating the ICC function, the driver should ensure the safety of the vehicle perimeter and avoid over-reliance on the system.
- Drivers should always be vigilant, pay close attention to all possible dangerous situations around them, and take the initiative to control the vehicle manually in time when necessary to ensure safe driving.
- ICC will be affected by weather, illumination and the clarity of lane lines. Under the conditions of backlight, sunset, road surface covered by ice and snow, and serious wear of lane lines, the performance will be significantly reduced. Please use ICC with caution at this time.
- Do not use the ICC system on winding roads with sharp turns, icy and slippery bends, or under weather conditions, such as dense fog, heavy rain and heavy snow, liable to hinder the sensing operation of front view camera.

**CAUTION**

- Do not attempt to activate the ICC until the vehicle has stabilized (the steering wheel is aligned, the front of the vehicle is aligned, the vehicle is in the center of the lane, and the vehicle has not made a sharp turn).
- ICC activation may fail when the vehicle is driving at an intersection. Users can drive through the intersection and enter the stable lane before trying to activate the ICC function.

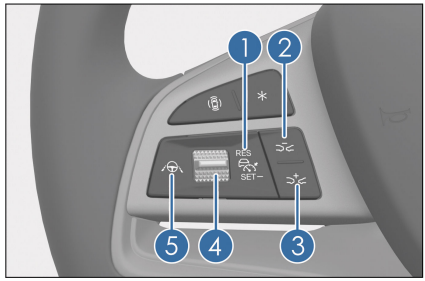
**CAUTION**

**Activate the ICC**

- The instrument cluster display , which indicates the ICC is activated.

Operation method:

- The driver can turn on the soft switch setting function of Driving Assist through the multimedia touchscreen → Settings → ADAS → Driving Assist. The system defaults to the previous settings when the vehicle starts.
- When the ICC activation conditions are met, press key ⑤ to activate the ICC function.
- After successful activation, the ICC icon on the instrument display . The target vehicle speed is displayed in .




**Cruise Assistance**

- On the basis of ACC function, ICC assists the driver to control the vehicle, keeps the vehicle running in the central area of the current lane, supports all ACC functions such as constant speed cruise and car-following cruise, and supports all ACC operations such as adjusting target speed and car-following time interval.

**WARNING**

- Drivers should set the target speed and following time according to local traffic laws and regulations and actual road conditions, and adjust it in time when the situation changes, so as to ensure safe driving all the time.
- ICC can not identify all risk scenarios, drivers still need to observe the road ahead at all times, and control the speed or apply brakes in time when necessary. The driver must hold the steering wheel with both hands at all times, observe the road and the surrounding environment, and be ready to take prompt and active control of the vehicle and take corrective measures.
- Do not rely too heavily on the ICC to keep the vehicle in the lane. In scenarios such as bends, the vehicle may still press the line or deviate from the central area of the lane, and it is the driver's responsibility to ensure that the vehicle is on the right course.
- Pressing the steering wheel button ⑤ or releasing the brake pedal after pressing it hard while the vehicle is parked will cause the vehicle to exit the ICC, which may cause the vehicle to move forward suddenly due to

**WARNING**

idling, thus causing an accident. Please always pay attention to the system prompts and the driving environment. In case of idle driving, please correct and actively control the vehicle in time to ensure safe driving.

- Drivers should always be vigilant, pay close attention to all possible dangerous situations around them, and take the initiative to control the vehicle manually in time when necessary to ensure safe driving.

**Driver's motion departure warning**

- During ICC activation, the driver's continuous hands off the steering wheel will trigger the driver's motion off reminder;
- After the driver's movement is triggered from the three-level reminder, the vehicle will actively exit the ICC, slow down to brake in the lane, and light up the hazard warning lights.
- The following actions can interrupt the active parking behavior in this lane:
  - Turn off the double flash or turn on the left and right turn signals;
  - The driver steps on the accelerator pedal and turns the steering wheel at the same time;
  - The driver cancels the function through the steering wheel button/ paddle;
  - The gear is switched to "P" gear.
- In a single power-up cycle, the ICC function will be disabled after three times of triggering the driver motion out of the level 3 alarm, and the function can be activated normally

after the power-up and power-down again.

## Intelligent Speed Limit Control (ISLC)

- When the speed limit value identified by the traffic sign recognition system is inconsistent with the ACC target cruise speed value set by the user, the system will prompt the user whether to control the target cruise speed according to the speed limit value. When the user presses the "SET-" or "RES +" button, the target cruise speed control will be performed according to the speed limit value.
- When the system identifies road signs such as roundabouts and intersections, it will prompt whether to adjust the ACC target cruise speed.
- When the speed limit forecast function is enabled, if the front speed limit value obtained by the speed limit forecast is inconsistent with the currently set target cruise speed, the system will prompt the user whether to control the target cruise speed according to the front speed limit value. When the user presses the "SET-" or "RES +" button, the target cruise speed control will be performed according to the front speed limit value.
- The operating speed range of the system is 30-150km/h.

**Function settings**

- Speed limit control setting path: To enable or disable ISLC, go to multimedia touchscreen → Settings ⚙ → ADAS → Safety Assist → TSR → ISLC.
- The ISLC function is off by default.
- The system defaults to the previous settings when the vehicle starts.
- When TSR is disabled, ISLC also ceases to function.
- With TSR on, ISLC can be enabled or disabled depending on your needs.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- Intelligent Speed Limit Control (ISLC) function is a combination of the adaptive cruise function and the traffic sign recognition function, and the instructions for use of the adaptive cruise function and the traffic sign recognition function shall be strictly followed.

## Forward Collision Warning (FCW)

- The Forward Collision Warning (FCW) function uses sensors such as front-facing millimeter wave radar or camera to detect vehicles, pedestrians and riders in front of the vehicle. When the system determines that there is a risk of collision between the vehicle and the vehicle, pedestrian or rider in front of the vehicle, it will send an audible and visual alarm to remind the driver to take necessary measures to mitigate or avoid the risk of collision.

The Forward Collision Warning (FCW) function is divided into the following three sub-functions:

- Safe distance warning: When the vehicle is running at a speed of about 65 km/h ~ 150 km/h, the system detects the driving environment in front of the vehicle in real time, and when it is recognized that the vehicle has been following the vehicle in front for a long time, it sends out a safe distance alarm to remind the driver

that the distance between the vehicle and the front vehicle is too close.

  - When the safe distance alarm is given, the instrument prompts the driver of the risk by turning on the indicator light and prompting "Please keep a safe distance".

- Pre-warning: When the vehicle is running at a speed of about 15 km/h ~ 150 km/h, the system will give a pre-alarm when it determines that there is a risk of collision between the vehicle and the target in front. The driver must take prompt and appropriate actions to ensure a safe driving distance.

  - In case of pre-alarm, it will be prompted visually and audibly, the instrument indicator light will be on, the buzzer will give an alarm, and the classical Chinese will prompt "please brake".

- In case of emergency alarm: When the vehicle is running at a speed of about 15 km/h ~ 150 km/h, the driver does not take appropriate actions in time after the pre-alarm, the collision risk is aggravated, and the system will give an emergency alarm. The driver must take prompt and appropriate actions to ensure a safe driving distance.

  - In case of emergency alarm, it will be prompted by means of hearing, vision and touch. The instrument indicator light will be on, the buzzer will give an alarm, and the classical Chinese will prompt "please brake", which may be accompanied by a short brake reminder.

**WARNING**

- FCW is only a driving assistance function, which may be affected by many factors, such as vehicle speed, perception accuracy, target type, position relationship with the target, system delay, etc. It may not be able to send a warning in time or miss to trigger a warning, or the system may trigger a warning by mistake due to misrecognition. The FCW function cannot replace the driver's judgment and operation.

**Function settings**

- The driver can set theFCW parameters through the multimedia touchscreen → Settings → ADAS → Driving Assist.
- Values and meanings of FCW parameters are as follows:
  - Disable: Forward Collision Warning (FCW)
  - Later: Enable the FCW, and the warning time is late.
  - Moderate Enable the FCW, and the warning time is moderate.
  - Earlier: Enable the FCW, and the warning time is early.

**REMINDER**

- The FCW parameter defaults to Moderate.
- If the FCW switch is turned off during this trip. When the vehicle is restarted, the forward collision alert is turned back on and the parameter is set to the default value of "Moderate".

**System limitations**

- Forward collision reminders may not be issued for the following objectives, including but not limited to:

- A vehicle, pedestrian, or cyclist coming head-on from another vehicle;
- A vehicle, pedestrian, or cyclist that cuts obliquely into the path of its own vehicle;
- Vehicles, pedestrians or cyclists travelling in adjacent lanes;
- All kinds of animals;
- All kinds of special-shaped vehicles, such as sprinklers, vans, road construction vehicles and so on.

- Forward collision warning may be affected or inoperative under the following conditions, including but not limited to:
  - Poor weather conditions, such as rain, snow and fog;
  - Poor lighting conditions, such as night, glare, direct sunlight and other environments;
  - The sensors are dirty, fogged, damaged, or blocked.
  - The hood and tailgate are not closed properly or they are opened during driving;
  - The driver does not wear the seat belt or unfasten the seat belt during driving.
  - The driver steps on the brake;
  - The driver presses the accelerator sharply.
  - The driver frequently switches between the accelerator pedal and brake pedal during driving.
  - When the electronic body stability system is off or the fault lamp is on;
  - Driver modification, such as repainting, causing the body paint to be too thick, sticking film or tape, decoration, etc., affecting the performance of the camera or millimeter wave radar;
  - The system is in the process of starting (for example, the vehicle has just been powered on, or the system has been restarted).
  - Scenarios mentioned in System General Limitations.
  - The system has failed or requires service.
- In complex traffic situations, FCW may not be able to respond properly to the following situations, including but not limited to:
  - Pedestrians or vehicles are entering the sensor detection range fast.
  - Pedestrians are obscured by other objects.
  - The typical profile of pedestrians are indistinguishable from the background.
  - Pedestrians are not detected, due to, for example, coverage by special clothing or other materials.
  - The vehicle travels on a curve with a small turning radius.
  - In some environments, the detection may be affected or delayed. For example, when the radar cross section of the target is too small (it may be a bicycle, tricycle, carriage, pedestrian, electric bicycle, motorcycle or special-shaped vehicle, etc.), there is a risk that the system cannot confirm the distance to the target in front, and the response to such target may be delayed or unable to respond;
  - Millimeter-wave radar is interfered by other millimeter-wave radar sources, which leads to failure or misrecognition.

- Detection may also be affected by noise or electromagnetic waves, resulting in delays or interference.

- The FCW may trigger unnecessary braking for water stains on the ground, road shadows, manhole covers, iron plates or road signs.
- If the vehicle is driven for a long time in special road conditions such as circular parking lot and tunnel, the front millimeter wave radar may be temporarily limited in function due to its detection characteristics, and its function will be restored after leaving the current special road.

**WARNING**

- Drivers must drive safely and observe the surrounding traffic conditions at all times. In any case, FCW should not be used to replace the normal driver's judgment and operation.
- If FCW gives an alarm, the driver must brake based on traffic conditions to decrease vehicle speed or steer away from obstacles.
- If the vehicle is closely followed for a long time, the safe distance alarm will give a distance warning. If the vehicle ahead brakes suddenly, collision may be unavoidable.
- The pedestrian protection scenario cannot overcome the limitations of some physical conditions, and the function may not be fully implemented within the speed range specified by the system. Therefore, the responsibility for taking timely and effective braking action always lies in the driver. Whether the pedestrian protection scenario is braked or not needs to be based on the actual situation.
- Pedestrian protection scenarios cannot rely on the system itself to completely avoid accidents and serious injuries.
- Pedestrian protection scenarios may trigger unwanted reminders in some complex conditions, for example, on curved main roads.
- In the event of a functional failure, there may be an unwanted alarm intervention, for example, due to a radar/forward-looking camera angle misalignment.
- Do not attempt to test the FCW system on your own using objects such as carton, iron plate, dummy, etc. The system may not work properly and thus result in accidents.
- It is recommended to go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for professional calibration of the Millimeter wave radar in case of any of the following situations:
  - Remove the millimeter wave radar or forward camera.
  - The toe-in or rear axle wheel camber has been adjusted during four-wheel alignment.
  - A collision happens.
  - ACC system performance has degraded or become abnormal.
- Use FCW based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.

**REMINDER**

- The FCW function does not guarantee a warning in all cases, and in complex traffic situations, the system cannot always clearly identify vehicles, pedestrians or cyclists.
- In this case, the instrument cluster display shows corresponding information (dirty surface or foreign matter covering causes blindness of the sensor); then, foreign matters on the sensor surface shall be removed as required. When the sensor is dirty or covered by foreign matter, the forward collision warning function are turned off. After clearing, the forward collision warning function are normal.

## Automatic Emergency Braking (AEB)

- Automatic emergency braking (AEB) uses sensors such as front millimeter wave radar and camera to detect vehicles, pedestrians and cyclists in front of the vehicle. When the system determines that there is a serious risk of collision between the vehicle and the vehicle, pedestrian or cyclist in front of the vehicle, it will automatically apply the necessary emergency braking to assist the driver to avoid or mitigate the collision.
- When the vehicle is running at a speed of about 4 km/h to 150 km/h, the automatic emergency braking (AEB) system detects the driving environment in front of the vehicle in real time, and automatically brakes to reduce the speed of the vehicle when it is recognized that the vehicle is about to collide with the vehicle, pedestrian or rider in front.
- In case of emergency braking, the instrument displays the brake icon, displays the pop-up window animation, and displays "emergency braking" in classical Chinese, accompanied by a sound alarm.

**WARNING**

- The AEB is a driver assistance function, which is not designed to avoid collision, but only to assist the driver to avoid or mitigate collision.
- Braking will be affected by many factors, such as vehicle speed, perception accuracy, target type, position relationship with the target, system delay, braking system performance, tire status and so on. It may also cause the system to trigger the brake by mistake due to misrecognition. The AEB function cannot replace the driver's judgment and operation.

**Function settings**

- Users can activate or deactivate the AEB through the multimedia touchscreen → Settings → ADAS → Safety Assist.

**WARNING**

- The driver is strongly advised not to turn off the automatic emergency braking function. If the automatic emergency braking function is turned off, the vehicle will not be able to help the driver reduce the speed of the vehicle, and will not be able to assist the

**WARNING**

driver to avoid or mitigate the collision as far as possible.

**REMINDER**

- This AEB function is enabled by default.
- Turning off the “AEB" switch is only effective for this trip. When the vehicle is restarted, the AEB is turned on again.

**System limitations**

- The AEB can only be activated when the driving speed is greater than 4 km/h. This function is designed to reduce the possible risk of collision and does not mean that the collision can be avoided at all speeds. Please note that the system does not guarantee that it can be triggered accurately under any working condition. Please drive carefully.
- Automatic emergency braking may not apply for the following purposes, including but not limited to:
  - A vehicle, pedestrian, or cyclist coming head-on from another vehicle;
  - A vehicle, pedestrian, or cyclist that cuts obliquely into the path of its own vehicle;
  - Vehicles, pedestrians or cyclists travelling in adjacent lanes;
  - All kinds of animals;
  - All kinds of special-shaped vehicles, such as sprinklers, vans, road construction vehicles and so on.
- Automatic emergency braking may be affected or inoperative under the following conditions, including but not limited to:
  - Poor weather conditions, such as rain, snow and fog;
  - Poor lighting conditions, such as night, glare, direct sunlight and other environments;
  - Poor road conditions, such as pits, bumps, wet and slippery, too large ramp angle, etc.;
  - The sensors are dirty, fogged, damaged, or blocked.
  - The hood and tailgate are not closed properly or they are opened during driving;
  - The driver does not wear the seat belt or unfasten the seat belt.
  - The driver presses the accelerator sharply.
  - The driver frequently switches between the accelerator pedal and brake pedal during driving.
  - When the electronic body stability system is off or the fault lamp is on;
  - Driver modification, such as repainting, causing the body paint to be too thick, sticking film or tape, decoration, etc., affecting the performance of the camera or millimeter wave radar;
  - The system is in the process of starting (for example, the vehicle has just been powered on, or the system has been restarted).
  - Scenarios mentioned in System General Limitations.
  - The system has failed or requires service.
- In complex traffic situations, automatic emergency braking may not respond correctly to the following situations, including but not limited to:

- Pedestrians or vehicles are entering the sensor detection range fast.
- Pedestrians are obscured by other objects.
- The typical profile of pedestrians are indistinguishable from the background.
- Pedestrians are not detected, due to, for example, coverage by special clothing or other materials.
- The vehicle travels on a curve with a small turning radius.
- In some environments, the detection may be affected or delayed. For example, when the radar cross section of the target is too small (it may be a bicycle, tricycle, carriage, pedestrian, electric bicycle, motorcycle or special-shaped vehicle, etc.), there is a risk that the system cannot confirm the distance to the target in front, and the response to such target may be delayed or unable to respond;
- Millimeter-wave radar is interfered by other millimeter-wave radar sources, which leads to failure or misrecognition.
- Detection may also be affected by noise or electromagnetic waves, resulting in delays or interference.

- The system may not always achieve the optimum level of performance under the following circumstances, including but not limited to:
  - The front bumper is strongly impacted due to an accident or other reasons.
  - Excessive wear of brake pads or abnormal brake system.
  - Tires are not properly inflated or excessively worn.
  - Non-conforming tires are installed.
  - Snow chains are installed.
  - Use of a small spare tire or tire repair kit.
  - When the vehicle is heavily loaded.
  - The vehicle is in the running-in period.
- The AEB may trigger unnecessary braking for water stains on the ground, road shadows, manhole covers, iron plates or road signs.
- If the vehicle is driven for a long time in special road conditions such as circular parking lot and tunnel, the front millimeter wave radar may be temporarily limited in function due to its detection characteristics, and its function will be restored after leaving the current special road.
- When the vehicle is in special driving modes such as driving with trailer, snow, mud, sand and mountain, the automatic emergency braking cannot be activated.
- The AEB is not activated frequently, and the system may not trigger automatic emergency braking again for tens of seconds after the previous activation of automatic emergency braking.

**WARNING**

- Drivers must drive safely and observe the surrounding traffic conditions at all times. In any case, automatic emergency braking should not be used to replace the normal driver's judgment and operation.
- The pedestrian protection scenario cannot overcome the limitations of some physical conditions, and the function may not be fully implemented

**WARNING**

within the speed range specified by the system. Therefore, the responsibility for taking timely and effective braking action always lies in the driver. Whether the pedestrian protection scenario is braked or not needs to be based on the actual situation.

- Pedestrian protection scenarios cannot rely on the system itself to completely avoid accidents and serious injuries.
- Pedestrian protection scenarios may trigger unwanted braking in some complex conditions, for example, on curved main roads.
- In the event of a functional failure, there may be unwanted braking intervention, e.g. due to radar/forward view camera angle misalignment.
- Do not attempt to test the AEB system on your own using objects such as carton, iron plate, dummy, etc. The system may not work properly and thus result in accidents.
- It is recommended to go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for professional calibration of the Millimeter wave radar in case of any of the following situations:
  - Remove the millimeter wave radar or forward camera.
  - The toe-in or rear axle wheel camber has been adjusted during four-wheel alignment.
  - A collision happens.

**WARNING**

  - ACC system performance has degraded or become abnormal.
- Use AEB based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.

**REMINDER**

- In the event of an emergency alarm, the system does not trigger the AEB if the driver has already reacted with awareness (e.g. when the driver turns the steering wheel or presses the accelerator pedal and brake pedal deeply).
- The AEB function does not guarantee emergency braking under all circumstances, and in complex traffic conditions, the system cannot always clearly identify vehicles, pedestrians or cyclists.
- In this case, the instrument cluster display shows corresponding information (dirty surface or foreign matter covering causes blindness of the sensor); then, foreign matters on the sensor surface shall be removed as required. When the sensor is dirty or covered by foreign matter, the automatic emergency braking function is turned off. After the sensor is cleared, the automatic emergency braking function is normal.

## Traffic Sign Recognition (TSR)

- Traffic Sign Recognition (TSR) obtains road speed limit information through cameras or navigation maps, and the instrument lights up the speed limit

indication icon to prompt the driver to control the speed within a reasonable range.

- TSR Contains two sub-functions: SLIF, SLF, ISA.
  - Speed Limit Information Function (SLIF): Obtain the road speed limit information through the camera, and the instrument lights up the speed limit indication icon.
  - Speed Limit Forecast (SLF): The speed limit information of the road ahead is obtained through a map under the road condition of an expressway or an urban expressway, and an instrument lights up a speed limit indication icon to forecast the speed limit information ahead and the distance from a new speed limit point in advance.
  - Speed Limit Alert (ISA): When the speed displayed on the instrument is greater than speed limit recognized by the system, the instrument speed limit icon will remind or sound alarm to remind the driver not to exceed the speed limit.

**Function settings**

- Set path: Multimedia touchscreen → Settings → ADAS → Safety Assist → Traffic Sign Recognition to set the on/off status of the traffic sign recognition function and its sub-functions.
- The Traffic sign recognition (TSR) function is turned on by factory default.
- The TSR function is disabled: No traffic sign recognition function and its sub-functions are enabled.
- Speed Limit Forecast (SLF): Enable/disable the Speed Limit Forecast (SLF) function.
- Sound prompt of speed limit change: Turn on/off the audible prompt accompanying the change of the speed limit sign.
- Speed Limit Alert (ISA): Enable/disable the icon/audible indication when the vehicle speed exceeds the speed limit sign value.
- Speed Limit Warning (SLW): Enable/disable the audible indication when the vehicle speed exceeds the speed limit sign value.

**REMINDER**

- Traffic sign recognition can only complete the recognition of speed limit signs, but not other traffic signs. It does not participate in the active control of vehicles. The control of vehicles is always in the hands of drivers. Please drive safely.
- The field of view of the front view camera shall not be blocked by objects or interfered with by strong light. Transient obstruction of vision and bright light disturbance can temporarily deactivate the function, which can recover on its own when the field of vision becomes normal. If it fails to resume on its own, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- When the traffic sign function fails, the TSR function is not available. Contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

**System limitations**

- The TSR is a driver assistance feature that cannot cope with all traffic, weather, visibility, roads.

- The detection of the TSR system for the speed limit sign is easily interfered by the environment. Under the following circumstances, the system may not work or its performance may be significantly reduced, including but not limited to:
  - The front windshield is dirty and foggy or there is an obstruction in front of the front view camera.
  - There are sudden changes in ambient brightness, for example when entering/exiting tunnels.
  - The road speed limit signs are not clear or distorted, inclined, reflective, partially blocked or covered;
  - The visibility is poor in snowy, rainy and foggy days.
  - The weight limit and width limit marks are not standardized and do not meet the size requirements specified by the state;
  - Vehicle positioning is not accurate, such as multi-storey elevated roads, parallel main and auxiliary roads and other complex road conditions.
- The proper functioning of the system may be influenced by broken windshields in the view of the front view camera, tinting of the vehicle's front windshield, the addition of non-compliant coatings, the placement of light-reflecting objects on the dashboard panel, and any additional objects that interfere with the view of the camera.

**WARNING**

- Do not rely too much on the traffic sign recognition function, which can only send out the warning information of vehicle speeding, but can not assist in controlling the speed of the vehicle.

**WARNING**

- The TSR function is only a driving assistance function. Limitations and precautions only include common situations that affect the traffic sign recognition function. Many factors may affect the function performance. Drivers should always observe the surrounding situation and take necessary measures to control the vehicle in time when danger is found.

**CAUTION**

- Situations where lane lines may not be identified include but are not limited to:
  - Unclear speed limit signs;
  - There are missing speed limit signs.
- Situations that may cause recognition difficulty or late function activation of the front view camera include, but are not limited to:
  - The front view camera comes off, is loosely installed or blocked.
  - The vehicle is running under extreme weather, such as rain, snow, or smog.
- In the following scenarios, the Traffic Sign Recognition (TSR) function may not work, not work properly, or quit:
  - The driving assistance system is in the process of starting (for example, the vehicle is just powered on, or the driving assistance system is restarted, etc.).

**CAUTION**

- Scenarios mentioned in the general limitations of driver assistance systems.
- The driver assistance system is faulty or requires repair.

## Lane Departure Assist (LDA)

- When the vehicle unconsciously deviates from the current lane, the driver is reminded or assisted to return the vehicle to the current lane.
- Lane Departure Assist (LDA)Contains two sub-functions: Lane Departure Warning (LDW) and Lane Departure Prevention (LDP). The operating speed range of the system is 60-150km/h.
  - Lane Departure Warning (LDW): When the driver has no steering input (turning the steering wheel vigorously, turning the steering lamp) and the vehicle unconsciously deviates from the current lane, the driver can use the camera and other sensors to identify the lane line on the road and detect the position of the vehicle in the lane. The system triggers the lane departure alarm to remind the driver through instrument prompt (the lane line on the departure side is displayed in red), tactile (steering wheel vibration) or audible alarm (applicable to overseas models) to help avoid or mitigate the risk of lane departure.
  - Lane Departure Prevention (LDP): When the driver has no steering input (turning the steering wheel vigorously, turning the steering lamp) and the vehicle unconsciously deviates from the current lane, the system prompts through the instrument (the deviating side lane line is displayed in red), and controls the steering wheel to correct the vehicle's driving path. Prevent the vehicle from deviating from the current lane and assist in avoiding or mitigating the risk of lane departure.

**Function Settings**

- Set path: Multimedia touchscreen → Settings → ADAS → Safety Assist → Lane Departure Assist (LDA).
- The LDA function is all "Enable" by default, and the subsequent power-on and power-off system defaults to the previous setting state.
- Lane departure assist warning mode, factory default vibration, selectable "sound"/ "sound + vibration", subsequent memory.
- Lane departure sensitivity: The factory default is moderate; after the sensitivity is adjusted to "high", it can be restored to "moderate" by re-powering on and off;
- Disable: No traffic sign recognition function and its sub-functions are enabled.
- Reminder: Only the lane departure warning function is turned on, and it will not assist in turning the steering wheel.
- Deviation correction: Only turn on the lane departure suppression function and turn the steering wheel to correct the deviation of the vehicle.
- Fully opened: Turn on lane departure warning and lane departure suppression at the same time.
- After the vehicle is powered off, the default settings are restored when the vehicle is restarted.

**REMINDER**

- LSS is suppressed if a turn signal is used and the vehicle changes lane as indicated by the turn signal.
- The Lane Departure Assist function will be inhibited if the driver continues to drive on the line.
- If the driver presses down hard on the brake pedal, accelerator pedal, or turns the steering wheel while the lane departure suppression function is active, the function is disabled.
- The Lane Departure Assist function will be inhibited if any of the vehicle's doors or front and rear lids are not closed or a breakdown occurs.
- The field of view of the camera shall not be blocked by objects or disturbed by strong light.The view of the camera shall not be blocked by objects or interfered with by strong light. Transient obstruction of vision and bright light disturbance can temporarily deactivate the function, which can recover on its own when the field of vision becomes normal. If it fails to resume on its own, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- During the activation of the LDP function, the driver's hands must not leave the steering wheel, otherwise the instrument will pop up to prompt the driver to take over the steering wheel. After the LDP is activated, the system accumulates the number of LDP correction activations in a rolling cycle of 180 seconds without driver intervention; there is no audible alarm within 5 seconds of the first LDP activation, and the second LDP activation reminds the driver to control the vehicle through audible alarm; the third and subsequent LDP activations accumulate more than 10 seconds of alarm time compared with the previous one.
- When the LDA function fails, the instrument displays the failure icon Give a voice prompt, accompanied by a text reminder. At this time, the lane departure assistant function is not available. It is recommended to contact the authorized service shop of BYD Automobile.

**System Limitations**

- LDA is a driver assistance feature that cannot cope with all traffic, weather, visibility, road and vehicle conditions.
- The detection of lane line by the LDA system is easily interfered by the environment. Under the following circumstances, the system may not work or its performance may be significantly reduced, including but not limited to:
  - The front windshield is dirty and foggy or there is an obstruction in front of the front view camera.
  - Glare is caused by direct sunlight, reflections from accumulated water on the road surface, incoming vehicles on the opposite lane, etc.
  - Sudden changes in light, such as when the vehicle is entering or exiting a tunnel
  - Lane lines obscured by tree shadows on roads in direct sunlight in sunny days.

- The visibility is poor in snowy, rainy and foggy days.
- Confusion of lane lines, such as overlap of old and new markings or temporary adjustment of lane lines due to road construction.
- A rapid change in lane alignment, such as a lane branching, crossing, or merging.
- Lane lines are indistinct, thin, worn, blurred, or covered with dirt/snow.
- The lane is too narrow, the number of lanes increases or decreases, the markings are changed for a short time, such as ramps or highway exits, or the lane lines are complex.
- Driving on a steep slope or sharp curve, the distance between the vehicle and the front vehicle is too close or the front vehicle blocks the lane marking.

- The system may not be able to correct the deviation in time due to wet and slippery roads, excessive lateral deviation speed of the vehicle, etc., for example:
  - Poor road condition, such as wet and slippery road surface after sprinkler operation or rain and snow.
  - The lateral deviation speed of the vehicle is too large or too small.
  - Other conditions that affect or reduce the steering performance of the vehicle.
- The proper functioning of the system may be influenced by broken windshields in the view of the front view camera, tinting of the vehicle's front windshield, the addition of non-compliant coatings, the placement of light-reflecting objects on the dashboard panel, and any additional objects that interfere with the view of the camera.

**WARNING**

- For safety reasons, do not test Lane Departure Assist (LDA) function on your own.
- Do not rely too much on the lane departure assistance function. The lane departure warning function can only send out the warning information of lane departure, but cannot assist in controlling the driving direction of the vehicle.
- LDA is only a driver assistance function. Limitations and precautions only include common situations that affect Lane Departure Assist. Many factors may affect the performance of the function. The driver shall always observe the surrounding conditions and take necessary measures to control the vehicle in time when the function is inhibited or exited.
- Please decide whether to use the lane departure alert according to personal needs, traffic conditions and road environment.

**CAUTION**

- It is recommended to turn LDA off when driving in any of the following conditions:
  - Driving in a sporty style;
  - Severe weather conditions;
  - On uneven roads.
- Situations where lane lines may not be identified include but are not limited to:
  - Unclear lane lines.
  - Incomplete lane lines.

**CAUTION**

- Situations that may cause recognition difficulty or late function activation of the camera include, but are not limited to:
  - The position of the camera is loose, falling off or blocked;
  - The vehicle is running under extreme weather, such as rain, snow, or smog.
  - The front view camera is partially or completely blocked.
  - LDW and LDP cannot be activated when the vehicle is in special driving modes such as driving with trailer, snow, mud, sand and mountain.
- In the following scenarios, the Lane Departure Assist (LDA) function may not work, not work properly, or quit:
  - The driving assistance system is in the process of starting (for example, the vehicle is just powered on, or the driving assistance system is restarted, etc.).
  - Scenarios mentioned in the general limitations of driver assistance systems.
  - The driver assistance system is faulty or requires repair.

## Emergency Lane Keeping Assist (ELKA)

- When the vehicle unconsciously deviates from the current road surface or unconsciously deviates from the lane and there is a risk of collision with the vehicle behind the adjacent lane in the same direction or the vehicle coming from the opposite lane, the steering wheel is assisted to correct the deviation so as to avoid and reduce the possible risk of collision.
- Emergency Lane Keeping Assist (ELKA): Sensors such as cameras are used to detect the road boundaries and lane lines ahead, and angular millimeter wave radar is used to detect vehicles in adjacent lanes. If the system recognizes that the driver unconsciously deviates from the road or judges that there is a risk of deviation and collision between the vehicle and the target vehicle, it will assist in controlling the steering wheel to correct the deviation, so as to control the vehicle to keep driving in the current lane. O as to avoid or reduce the risk that the vehicle unintentionally crosses the road boundary or collides with an oncoming vehicle in the opposite direction or an overtaking vehicle in an adjacent lane.
- System operating speed range: 50km/h-150km/h.

**Function Settings**

- Set path: Multimedia touchscreen → Settings → ADAS → Safety Assist → Emergency Lane Keeping Assist (ELKA).
- The ELKA function is turned on by factory default. The system defaults to the previous settings when the vehicle starts.
- Disable: Do not turn on the ELKA funtion.
- Enable: Turn on the ELKA funtion.

**REMINDER**

- If the driver presses down hard on the brake pedal, accelerator pedal, or turns the steering wheel

**REMINDER**

while the ELKA function is active, the function is disabled.

- If the driver turns on the turn signal and changes lanes in the direction of the turn signal, the adjacent vehicle approach avoidance function will be inhibited in the "Departure to the Edge of the Road" scenario and the "Departure to the Opposite Lane with an Opposite Vehicle" scenario.
- If the driver continues to press the line or the edge of the road, the adjacent vehicle approach avoidance function will be inhibited.
- If there is a risk of deviation from the road or side collision, but the vehicle may collide with other obstacles on the path after correction, the adjacent vehicle approach avoidance function will not interfere with the direction of the vehicle.
- The field of view of the front view camera shall not be blocked by objects or interfered with by strong light. Transient obstruction of vision and bright light disturbance can temporarily deactivate the function, which can recover on its own when the field of vision becomes normal. If it fails to resume on its own, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- When the ELKA is faulty, the instrument When the icon is always on, the Emergency Lane Keeping Assist (ELKA) function is not available. Contact a BYD

**REMINDER**

authorized dealer or service provider.

**System Limitations**

- The detection of lane lines, road edges or obstacles by the ELKA system is easily interfered by the environment, and the system may not work, not work properly or its performance may be significantly reduced, including but not limited to:
  - The front windshield is dirty and foggy or there is an obstruction in front of the front view camera.
  - Glare is caused by direct sunlight, reflections from accumulated water on the road surface, incoming vehicles on the opposite lane, etc.
  - Sudden changes in light, such as when the vehicle is entering or exiting a tunnel
  - Lane lines obscured by tree shadows on roads in direct sunlight in sunny days.
  - The boundary lines between the road and the side grass, soil or curb, etc. are unidentifiable.
  - The visibility is poor in snowy, rainy and foggy days.
  - Confusion of lane lines, such as overlap of old and new markings or temporary adjustment of lane lines due to road construction.
  - A rapid change in lane alignment, such as a lane branching, crossing, or merging.
  - Lane lines are indistinct, thin, worn, blurred, or covered with dirt/snow.
  - The lane is too narrow, the number of lanes increases or decreases, the markings are changed for a short

time, such as ramps or highway exits, or the lane lines are complex.

- Driving on a steep slope or sharp curve, the distance between the vehicle and the front vehicle is too close or the front vehicle blocks the lane marking.

- The system may be missed, misdetected or not detected in time due to various factors such as the type, location, occurrence time and occlusion of obstacles, resulting in the system not working in time, for example:
  - There is a large vehicle in front of the ego vehicle, which blocks the detection area of the radar or camera of the vehicle.
  - Other obstacles move quickly or at close range to the front or side of the vehicle.
  - From the front/rear side of the ego vehicle, there are barriers, water horses, cone barrels and other obstacles that may be missed by the system.
  - The front/rear side of the ego vehicle is blocked, for example, there are obstacles such as vehicles, pedestrians, cyclists, etc. That block the detection area of the radar or camera of the vehicle.
  - There is an obstacle in front of/behind the side of the ego vehicle that does not have a strong contrast with the light of the front sight environment.
  - There is a target in front of/behind the side of the ego vehicle that can only be detected after the vehicle changes lanes.
  - The target is in the curve from the front/rear of the ego vehicle side.
  - Other situations beyond the detection conditions and range of the radar or camera of the vehicle.
- The system may not be able to correct the deviation in time due to wet and slippery roads, excessive lateral deviation speed of the vehicle, etc., for example:
  - Poor road condition, such as wet and slippery road surface after sprinkler operation or rain and snow.
  - The lateral deviation speed of the vehicle is too large or too small.
  - Other conditions that affect or reduce the steering performance of the vehicle.
- The proper functioning of the system may be influenced by broken windshields in the view of the front view camera, tinting of the vehicle's front windshield, the addition of non-compliant coatings, the placement of light-reflecting objects on the dashboard panel, and any additional objects that interfere with the view of the camera.

**WARNING**

- For the sake of the driver's driving safety, please do not test the ELKA function by yourself.
- The ELKA function will only assist in correcting the vehicle to return to the original lane when there is a risk of collision when the vehicle deviates from the road or deviates from the lane. It is impossible for the driver assistant to control the vehicle to keep driving in the central area of the lane. Do not rely too much on the ELKA function to avoid side collision.
- ELKA is only a driver assistance function. Limitations

**WARNING**

and precautions only include common situations that affect ELKA. Many factors may affect the performance of the function. Drivers should always observe the surrounding situation and take necessary measures to control the vehicle in time when danger is found.

- Use ELKA based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.

**CAUTION**

- Situations where lane lines may not be identified include but are not limited to:
  - Pedestrians, animals, and specialty or specially-shaped vehicles
  - Unclear or incomplete lane lines
- Situations that may result in detection failure of the camera or late alarm include but are not limited to:
  - The view camera comes off, is loosely installed or blocked.
  - The vehicle is running under extreme weather, such as rain, snow, or smog.
  - The camera lens is partially or completely blocked.
- Situations that may result in detection failure of mmWave radars or late alarms include, but are not limited to:
  - MmWave radars come off, are loosely installed, or are blocked.
  - The vehicle is running under extreme weather, such as rain, snow, or smog.

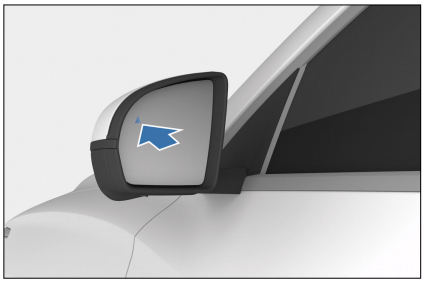
**CAUTION**

  - The vehicle encounters certain metal guardrails or similar road conditions.
  - ELKA cannot be activated when the vehicle is in special driving modes such as driving with trailer, snow, mud, sand and mountain.
- In the following scenarios, the Emergency Lane Keeping Assist (ELKA) function may not work, not work properly, or quit:
  - The ego vehicle is at the intersection.
  - The driving assistance system is in the process of starting (for example, the vehicle is just powered on, or the driving assistance system is restarted, etc.).
  - Scenarios mentioned in the general limitations of driver assistance systems.
  - The driver assistance system is faulty or requires repair.

## Blind Spot Detection (BSD)

- When the target in the driver's visual blind area is detected, the risk warning prompt is sent out to remind the driver to pay attention to safe driving. This function is enabled by default.
- Blind Spot Detection (BSD) function uses sensors such as radar to detect targets (vehicles, riders) in the driver's blind spot on the side of the vehicle. When the vehicle runs at a speed of about 15km/h ~ 150km/h, the blind area monitoring system will light the alarm lamp on the outside rearview

mirror on the target side when it detects that there is a target in the blind area. If the driver toggles the steering lamp lever at this time, the alarm lamp (the alarm lamp on the outside rearview mirror at the target side) will flash, the instrument icon will light up and the light-colored radar wave on the same side of the instrument will flash to remind the driver of the danger of collision.

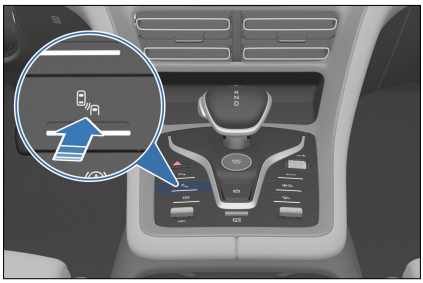


**REMINDER**

- Do not paste any object on the exterior rearview mirror lens, so as not to affect the normal use of the blind area monitoring function.
- The driver must make sure that BSD is operating normally and keep the position for installing the radar sensors in good condition. Any areas covered in mud, snow, or other obstructions should be cleaned as quickly as possible.
- BSD will not operate in the travel with trailer mode.
- The calibration of radar sensors may be affected by vibration or collision, resulting in compromised BSD performance. If this is detected, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

**Function settings**

- The driver can activate or deactivate the blind area monitoring function through the blind area monitoring switch on the shift panel.



- Users can activate or deactivate the BSD through the multimedia touchscreen → Settings ⚙ → ADAS → Safety Assist.
- This switch is on by default.

**System limitations**

- BSD is a driver assistance feature that cannot cope with all traffic, weather, visibility, road and vehicle conditions.
- Blind spot monitoring and its related functions may not work properly or quit when encountering (including but not limited to) the following scenarios:
  - Poor visibility, such as rain, snow, fog and other bad weather, smoke, etc.
  - The vehicle is driving in a sharp turning section.
  - The speed of the vehicle is less than 15km/h.
  - The ego vehicle is overtaking the vehicle in front or meeting the vehicle.
- The system is in the process of starting (for example, the vehicle has just been powered on, or the system has been restarted).
- Scenarios mentioned in System General Limitations.

- The system has failed or requires service.
- Under poor lighting conditions such as strong light and reflection, the system may misdetect, for example, the system may misdetect rails, gantries, height limit poles or traffic signs, reflective ground spikes, etc. As obstacles, and then trigger reminders.

**WARNING**

- When the blind area monitoring system issues a warning, the driver should avoid changing lanes to the warning side lane. Drivers should ensure that lane changes are made in a safe manner at all times.
- BSD can not replace the role of internal and external rearview mirrors.
- The driver should always be vigilant, pay close attention to all possible dangerous situations around, and timely intervene or control the vehicle (such as appropriate deceleration, braking, steering, etc.) to ensure safe driving. Violation of the above operation will affect the driver's safe driving, may cause accidents, and even cause property damage, personal injury and death.

## Door Opening Warning (DOW)

- When the collision risk of opening the door is detected, an early warning is issued to remind the driver to pay attention to the collision risk and improve the safety. This function is enabled by default.
- The Door Open Warning (DOW) function detects targets (vehicles, riders) on the left and right sides of the vehicle through sensors such as radar. When the vehicle is stationary in the power-on state or runs slowly at a speed not higher than 2km/h, the door opening safety warning system will light the warning lamp on the outside rearview mirror at the target side when it detects that there is a risk of collision when opening the door, and the warning lamp will remain on until the door opening safety warning is lifted to remind the driver to pay attention to the risk; If the driver opens the corresponding door at this time, the warning lamp of the exterior rearview mirror on the corresponding side flashes, accompanied by a warning tone, reminding the driver to pay attention to the collision risk.

**REMINDER**

- Do not paste any object on the exterior rearview mirror lens, so as not to affect the normal use of the DOW function.
- Rear lateral collision braking may fail or not be timely due to several factors such as weather and road environment.
- DOW will not operate in the travel with trailer mode.
- The calibration of the side auxiliary radar sensor of the DOW may be affected by vibration or collision, which will degrade the system performance. If this is detected, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

**Function settings**

- Users can activate or deactivate the DOW through the multimedia touchscreen → Settings → ADAS → Safety Assist.

- This switch is on by default.

**System limitations**

- The DOW is a driver assistance feature that cannot cope with all traffic, weather, visibility, road and vehicle conditions.
- The door opening safety reminder and its related functions may not work properly or quit when encountering (including but not limited to) the following scenarios:
  - Poor visibility, such as rain, snow, fog and other bad weather, smoke, etc.
  - The ego vehicle stops at the turning point or beside the wall.
  - There is a large vehicle in rear of the ego vehicle, which blocks the detection area of the radar.
  - There are small targets or slow moving targets.
  - The target speed is too fast or there is turning behavior, for example, the target vehicle changes lanes to the rear of the vehicle, and other vehicles suddenly change lanes behind the vehicle in the detection area.
- The system is in the process of starting (for example, the vehicle is just powered on, or the driving assistance system is restarted, etc.).
- Scenarios mentioned in System General Limitations.
- The system has failed or requires service.
- Under poor lighting conditions such as strong light and reflection, the system may misdetect, for example, the system may misdetect rails, gantries, height limit poles or traffic signs, reflective ground spikes, etc. As obstacles, and then trigger reminders.

**WARNING**

- The DOW cannot detect objects behind it through other vehicles or obstacles.
- The DOW cannot replace the function of internal and external rearview mirrors, and cannot replace the visual inspection of drivers and passengers. Active observation of the door opening environment before getting off is the most effective measure and responsibility for drivers and passengers to ensure personal safety.
- The DOW may give an early warning when there is no risk of collision. Stay alert and keep an eye on traffic so you can anticipate if anything needs to be done.
- The DOW can only prompt the collision risk through early warning, and can not avoid the collision accident.
- The driver should always be vigilant, pay close attention to all possible dangerous situations around, and timely intervene or control the vehicle (such as appropriate deceleration, braking, steering, etc.) to ensure safe driving. Violation of the above operation will affect the driver's safe driving, may cause accidents, and even cause property damage, personal injury and death.

## Rear Collision Warning (RCW)

- When the vehicle is moving forward, it will give a warning when it is detected that the vehicle may be rear-ended

by the rear vehicle. This function is disabled by default.

- When the vehicle is moving at a speed below about 150km/h, the Rear Collision Warning (RCW) function detects the driving environment behind the vehicle in real time through sensors such as radar, and sends a warning when it is recognized that the rear vehicle may collide with the vehicle (i.e. rear-end collision).
- When reminding, the interior atmosphere lights and the front left and right atmosphere lights (corresponding direction) are always on, and the red area at the rear of the instrument is highlighted. In addition to warning the driver through the instrument, the vehicle will also turn on the hazard warning lights at the same time to warn the rear driver of the risk of collision.
- Rear Collision Warning (RCW)

**WARNING**

- The RCW is a driving assistance function, which may be affected by many factors, such as vehicle speed, obstacle type, distance from obstacles, driving environment, system response delay, etc., and may not be able to give timely warning, missed warning or false warning. The RCW function cannot replace the driver's judgment and operation.
- The driver shall ensure the normal operation of the RCW function, and the installation position of the RCW auxiliary radar shall be kept in good condition, such as covering with soil, snow and other obstructions, which shall be cleaned in time.

**WARNING**

- RCW will not operate in the travel with trailer mode.
- The calibration of the rear auxiliary radar sensor of the RCW may be affected by vibration or collision, which will degrade the performance of the system. If this is detected, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

**Function settings**

- Users can activate or deactivate the RCW through the multimedia touchscreen → Settings → ADAS → Safety Assist.

**System limitations**

- The RCW is a driver assistance that cannot cope with all traffic, weather, visibility, road and vehicle conditions.
- The RCW only takes effect when the vehicle is stationary or moving forward. When reversing, the car will not remind the collision risk directly behind.
- The system may not be able to issue an alert when encountering (including but not limited to) the following scenarios:
  - Poor visibility, such as rain, snow, fog and other bad weather, smoke, etc.
  - Any door, front and rear covers of the vehicle are not closed or faulty.
  - The driver turns the steering wheel or there is a risk of the vehicle becoming laterally unstable (e.g. excessive steering wheel angle or rotational speed).
  - The driver presses the brake pedal deeply.

- The system is in the process of starting (for example, the vehicle is just powered on, or the driving assistance system is restarted, etc.).
- Scenarios mentioned in System General Limitations.
- The system has failed or requires service.

- In case of (including but not limited to) the following scenarios, the system may miss, misdetect or fail to detect obstacles in time due to the influence of various factors such as rear occlusion or rear target type, location and occurrence time, resulting in the system not reminding or not reminding in time:
  - Poor weather conditions, such as rain, snow and fog.
  - There is a large vehicle in rear of the ego vehicle, which blocks the detection area of the radar or camera of the vehicle.
  - The rear of the ego vehicle is blocked, or the light contrast between the obstacle and the front sight environment is not strong, which leads to unclear, inaccurate and incomplete identification of obstacles.
  - The ego vehicle or rear target in a curve.
  - There is a target behind the ego vehicle that can only be detected after the vehicle changes lanes.
  - The speed of the detected object is too fast, for example, other vehicles suddenly move quickly or move close to the rear of the vehicle.
  - The ego vehicle is backing up.
  - Other situations beyond the detection conditions and range of the radar or camera of the vehicle.
- Under poor lighting conditions such as strong light and reflection, the system may misdetect, for example, the system may misdetect rails, gantries, height limit poles or traffic signs, reflective ground spikes, etc. As obstacles, and then trigger reminders.

**WARNING**

- The RCW is a driving assistance function, which is affected by many factors, such as vehicle speed, obstacle type, distance from obstacle, driving environment, system response delay and so on. The RCW function cannot replace the driver's judgment and operation. Do not rely too much on the warning issued by the RCW system, and do not replace the driver's observation and judgment with the backward collision warning.
- The RCW can only remind the collision risk through the reminder, and can not avoid the collision accident or reduce the collision injury. When the vehicle issues a reminder, the driver should immediately take safety measures to avoid the vehicle falling into further danger.
- Due to the performance limitation of the system, the RCW may not be sent in time, missed or wrong.
- The driver should always be vigilant, pay close attention to all possible dangerous situations around, and timely intervene or control the vehicle (such as appropriate deceleration, braking, steering, etc.) to ensure safe driving. Violation of the above operation will affect the driver's safe driving, may cause accidents,

**WARNING**

and even cause property damage, personal injury and death.

## Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA)

- When the vehicle is reversing, the Rear Collision Traffic Alert (RCTA) function detects other vehicles driving in the blind area behind the vehicle through radar. If the system recognizes that the driver has unintentionally deviated from the road surface, or if it detects that there is a risk of collision between the vehicle and the vehicle, pedestrian or rider passing laterally behind. The operating speed range of the RCTA system is 0 to 15 km/h.
- At the time of early warning, the instrument prompts the driver of the risk by displaying the light gray radar wave on the corresponding side of the vehicle, classical Chinese prompt, alarm tone and voice broadcast, and triggering the rendering of the target.

**WARNING**

- RCTA is only a driving assistance function, which may be affected by many factors, such as vehicle speed, perception accuracy, target type, position relationship with the target, system delay, etc. It may not be able to send a warning in time or miss the trigger of the warning, or the system may trigger the warning by mistake due to misrecognition. Drivers should always observe the surrounding situation and take necessary measures to control the vehicle in time when danger is found.

**Function settings**

- Users can activate or deactivate the RCTA through the multimedia touchscreen → Settings → ADAS → Safety Assist.

**REMINDER**

- When the vehicle comes off the production line for the first time, the function is turned off by default.
- The system defaults to the previous settings when the vehicle starts.

**System limitations**

- RCTA is a driver assistance feature that cannot cope with all traffic, weather, visibility, road and vehicle conditions.
- The system may fail to brake in the following scenarios, including but not limited to:
  - Targets are outside radar detection range.
  - Poor visibility, such as night, rain, snow and other bad weather, smoke, etc.
  - The function switch is "OFF".
  - Vehicle is not in "R" gear.
  - System initialization has not been complete yet.
  - The system is in the process of starting (for example, the vehicle has just been powered on, or the system has been restarted).
  - Scenarios mentioned in System General Limitations.
  - The system has failed or requires service.

- In case of the following scenarios, the system may miss detection, false detection or fail to detect obstacles in time due to the influence of various factors such as rear occlusion or rear target type, location and occurrence time, resulting in the system not warning or not warning in time, including but not limited to:
  - The vehicle approaching from behind changes its lane at the last moment.
  - When the target vehicle approaches its own vehicle from behind at a very fast speed.
  - sharp turns, slopes, or other settings.
  - The target vehicle is blocked.
  - Bad weather, such as rain and snow. The radar position is loose, falling off or blocked. The vehicle encounters certain metal guardrails or similar road conditions.
  - In some environments, the detection may be affected or delayed. For example, when the radar cross section of the target is too small (it may be a bicycle, tricycle, carriage, pedestrian, electric bicycle, motorcycle or special-shaped vehicle, etc.), there is a risk that the system cannot confirm the distance to the target in front, and the response to such target may be delayed or unable to respond.
  - Millimeter-wave radar is interfered by other millimeter-wave radar sources, which leads to failure or misrecognition.
- Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA)
- Influence of vibration or collision on mmWave radar sensor calibration can degrade system performance. If this is detected, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- Under poor lighting conditions such as strong light or reflection, the system may trigger unnecessary braking on water stains, shadows, manhole covers, iron plates or road signs on the ground.

**WARNING**

- RCTA is only a driving assistance function, and its limitations only include common situations affecting rear lateral collision warning, and many factors may affect functional performance. Drivers should always observe the surrounding situation and take necessary measures to control the vehicle in time when danger is found.
- The RCTA may be invalid or not timely due to several factors such as weather and road environment.
- Use RCTA based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.
- Due to the performance limitation of the system, the RCTA may not be sent in time, missed or wrong.

## Rear Cross Traffic Brake (RCTB)

- Rear Cross Traffic Braking (RCTB) function is designed to warn and assist the driver in braking when exiting a vertical/inclined parking space and encountering a vehicle, pedestrian or cyclist crossing the road laterally from the rear, where there is a risk of collision, and to assist in avoiding a collision with a vehicle crossing the road, especially if the driver's view is obscured by a parked vehicle. The operating speed range of the RCTB is 0 to 10 km/h.

- When braking, the instrument prompts the driver of the risk by displaying the light gray radar wave on the corresponding side of the vehicle and the classical Chinese prompt.

**WARNING**

- RCTB is only a driving assistance function, which is not designed to avoid collision, but to assist the driver to avoid or mitigate collision.
- Braking will be affected by many factors, such as vehicle speed, perception accuracy, target type, position relationship with the target, system delay, braking system performance, tire status and so on. It may also cause the system to trigger the brake by mistake due to misrecognition. Drivers should always observe the surrounding situation and take necessary measures to control the vehicle in time when danger is found.

**Function settings**

- Users can activate or deactivate the RCTB through the multimedia touchscreen → Settings → ADAS → Safety Assist.

**REMINDER**

- When the vehicle comes off the production line for the first time, the function is turned on by default.
- By default, the system is switched on when the vehicle is started.

**System limitations**

- RCTB is a driver assistance feature that cannot cope with all traffic, weather, visibility, road and vehicle conditions.
- The system may fail to brake in the following scenarios, including but not limited to:
  - Targets are outside radar detection range.
  - Poor visibility, such as night, rain, snow and other bad weather, smoke, etc.
  - The function switch is in "Off" or "Remind".
  - Vehicle is not in "R" gear.
  - The driver presses the accelerator sharply.
  - System initialization has not been complete yet.
  - The system is in the process of starting (for example, the vehicle has just been powered on, or the system has been restarted).
  - Scenarios mentioned in System General Limitations.
  - The system has failed or requires service.
- In case of the following scenarios, the system may miss detection, false detection or fail to detect obstacles in time due to the influence of various factors such as rear occlusion or rear target type, location and occurrence time, resulting in the system not braking or not braking in time, including but not limited to:
  - The vehicle approaching from behind changes its lane at the last moment.
  - When the target vehicle approaches its own vehicle from behind at a very fast speed.
  - sharp turns, slopes, or other settings.
  - The target vehicle is blocked.
  - Bad weather, such as rain and snow. The radar position is loose, falling off

or blocked. The vehicle encounters certain metal guardrails or similar road conditions.

- In some environments, the detection may be affected or delayed. For example, when the radar cross section of the target is too small (it may be a bicycle, tricycle, carriage, pedestrian, electric bicycle, motorcycle or special-shaped vehicle, etc.), there is a risk that the system cannot confirm the distance to the target in front, and the response to such target may be delayed or unable to respond.
- Millimeter-wave radar is interfered by other millimeter-wave radar sources, which leads to failure or misrecognition.

- RCTB will not operate in the travel with trailer mode.
- Influence of vibration or collision on mmWave radar sensor calibration can degrade system performance. If this is detected, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- Under poor lighting conditions such as strong light or reflection, the system may trigger unnecessary braking on water stains, shadows, manhole covers, iron plates or road signs on the ground.
- The RCTB function is not activated frequently, and the system will not trigger the rear lateral collision brake again for tens of seconds after the previous rear lateral collision braking activation.

**WARNING**

- RCTB is only a driver assistance function, and its limitations only include common conditions affecting rear lateral impact braking, and many factors may affect functional performance. Drivers should always observe the surrounding situation and take necessary measures to control the vehicle in time when danger is found.
- RCTB may fail or not be timely due to several factors such as weather and road environment.
- Use RCTB based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.
- Due to the performance limitation of the system, the RCTB may not be sent in time, missed or wrong.

## Intelligent High Beam Control (IHBC)

- Intelligent High Beam Control (IHBC) is a driver assistance feature that helps the driver use the high beam properly in dark conditions. In dark scenes, it can be switched from low beam to high beam to provide the driver with maximum vision. Automatic switching from high beam to low beam in the presence of a vehicle in front, to avoid dazzling other drivers; and automatic switching from high beam to low beam in urban areas or other conditions.

**Function settings**

- The user can enable and disable the Intelligent High Beam Control (IHBC) via multimedia touchscreen → Settings → Light → Exterior Light.
- The system defaults to the previous settings when the vehicle starts.
- Example of Intelligent High Beam Control (IHBC) indicator:

| Standby State | Active Status | Fault Status |
| --- | --- | --- |
|  |  |  |

**ON/OFF conditions**

- Auto ON conditions:
  - The light is in AUTO position;
  - The vehicle speed is more than 35km/h and less than 140km/h;
  - The area in front of the vehicle is dark.
- Auto OFF conditions:
  - Under the working condition of day/night, the high beam will be inhibited when the road light source around the driving environment is sufficient;
  - High beam headlights are suppressed when there are other road traffic participants;
  - At night, if the driver turns on the turn signal, the high beam will be inhibited. After the turn signal is turned off, if the activation conditions are met, the high beam will be turned on again.

**WARNING**

- Due to a variety of environmental factors and conditions, the intelligent high beam may be triggered or disabled by mistake. Typical scenarios including but not limited to:
  - Weather conditions such as heavy fog, heavy rain or heavy snow are extremely unfavorable for driving.
  - There are traffic participants with poor lighting (such as pedestrians and bicycles), railways or waterways nearby, or wild animals on the roads.
  - There are highly reflective objects around (e.g., traffic signs on highways, water reflection on the road surface, etc.).
  - The front windshield is dirty, covered in mist, or blocked by stickers or decorations.

**CAUTION**

- IHBC is an assistant function of light control, but the system can not completely replace the driver, the driver should always follow the requirements of road regulations, according to the changes in the road environment to actively switch the high and low beam.
- In case there is a collision or the sensor has been reassembled, it is recommended to go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for sensor calibration so as to avoid affecting system performance.

**REMINDER**

- Abnormal function of the system or failure of the lighting system may affect the function of the intelligent high beam.

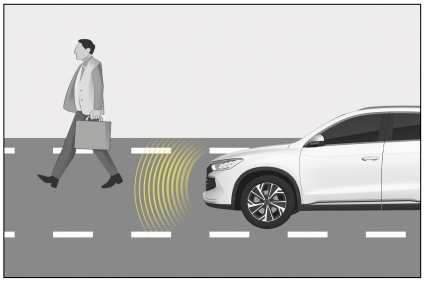
**REMINDER**

- The driver's manual activation of the high beam will inhibit the IHBC function.

## Acoustic Vehicle Alert System

Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System (AVAS) means that a warning sound is made to pedestrians in the vicinity of the vehicle when the vehicle is traveling at a low speed.

- During driving forward:
  - When the vehicle speed is 0km/h < V ⩽ 30km/h, the prompt sound remains unchanged.
  - If the vehicle speed is above 30 km/h, the warning sound stops automatically.



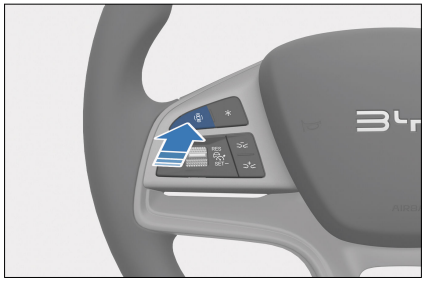
- When the vehicle is reversing, a continuous warning sound is given out.
- Whether the vehicle goes forward or backward, once the engine is started, the warning sound will stop.

**WARNING**

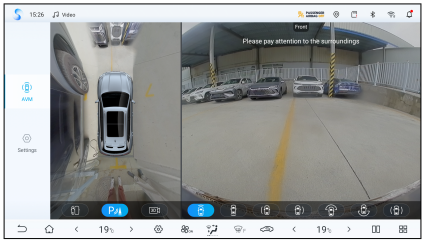
- If the AVAS prompt sound cannot be heard when driving at a low speed, stop the vehicle in a relatively safe and quiet place, open a window, then drive in R gear and check whether you can hear an audible prompt from the front of the vehicle. If it is confirmed that there is no sound, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider to deal with it.

## Around View Monitor (AVM)*

- When the power gear is at "ON" or above, press the button "*" on the steering wheel or click "Vehicle Image" on the multimedia homepage, and the system will enter the panoramic image screen.
- Shifting to "R" can forcibly start the panoramic view system.



- On the bottom of the multimedia touchscreen, tap the icon for front, rear, right, or left view. View of the selected area is displayed in the image section.




- Double-click the image area in the front and rear single view to display the full screen.
- Click the radar icon in the panoramic image, open the radar display, and click again to close the radar display. When the radar display is turned on and the "Radar Triggered Image" setting switch is turned on, the image will display an obstacle warning when approaching an obstacle.

- Tap the body image on the right to switch between visible and invisible body.
- After the vehicle starts, the image before last power-off is displayed on the invisible panoramic view interface. At this time, the foreign matters under the vehicle and in the surrounding blind spots may be inconsistent with the actual situation. The underbody image will be updated in real time only after the vehicle has moved, which must be driven beyond its length for a complete update.

**WARNING**

- This system uses wide-angle fisheye cameras, so the object on the display screen may appear somewhat deformed in comparison with the actual object.
- The automatic vehicle monitoring system is only to be used for parking/driving assistance. It is not safe to park or drive the car relying only on this system, because there are some blind spots in front of and behind the car. The surroundings of the car should be observed in other ways during the parking/driving process, so as to avoid accidents.
- When the side mirrors are not extended in place, do not use the automatic vehicle monitoring system; and when the automatic vehicle monitoring system is used for parking/driving, ensure that all the car doors are closed.
- The distance to an object displayed on the automatic vehicle monitoring screen may be different from the distance perceived subjectively, especially when the object is closer to the vehicle. Assess the distance in various ways.
- Cameras are installed above the front grille, side mirrors, and the rear license plate. Make sure the cameras are unobstructed.
- To prevent affecting the performance of cameras, avoid directly washing these cameras when washing the vehicle body with high-pressure water gun. Wipe any water or dust off the camera in time.
- Protect the cameras from any impact to prevent damage or malfunction.
- After the vehicle is powered on, if you press the panoramic view start button or shift into reverse while the multimedia system is not fully activated, the output on

**WARNING**

the panoramic view screen will be delayed or the screen will flash. This is a normal part of the camera power-on process.

- When the vehicle runs at a low speed, the transparent panoramic view function is affected by speed fluctuation or multiple stops, so there will be misalignment between the images below the vehicle and that outside the vehicle.

## Reversing Image System*

- The reversing image system helps the driver to reverse the car by displaying the image of the object behind the car in real time. It belongs to the parking assist system.

**CAUTION**

- In the following cases, it may be difficult to see the image on the screen, even if the system is functioning properly.
  - In the dark, eg at night
  - Extremely high or low temperatures near the lens
  - Water drops on the lens or high humidity
  - A foreign object, such as snow or dirt, on the len
  - Scratch or dirt on lens
  - There is a strong light on the lens
- If the camera captures a strong point light source, it will display a light spot on the screen,

**CAUTION**

which will interfere with the surrounding scene, resulting in unclear scenery.

**REMINDER**

- When using this system, it can be used in conjunction with the parking assistant system and the internal and side mirrors, but do not rely too much on it. When the surrounding space is very narrow, if necessary, please command the parking manually.
- Don't stop by just looking at the screen. There is an error between the perceived distance between the object and the plane on the screen and the actual distance. If you only look at the screen to stop, you may hit other vehicles, pedestrians or obstacles. Be sure to actually observe the surrounding objects before parking with the reverse image system.
- Do not use this system when the trunk is not fully closed.
- If you are rear-ended or hit an obstacle, the position and installation angle of the camera will change. It is recommended to contact the authorized service shop of BYD Automobile to check the location and installation angle of the camera.
- Because the camera has a dustproof and waterproof structure, do not disassemble, disassemble or modify it. Otherwise, it may be impossible to operate.

**REMINDER**

- If the temperature changes quickly, the system may not work properly.
- If snow and dirt stick to the camera, wash it with water and dry it with a soft cloth. For foreign matters that are not easy to wipe off, such as oil stains, rubber, etc., please clean them with mild detergent and water, and then dry them with a soft cloth.
- Do not stick organic solvent, car wax, window cleaner or glass film on the camera. If it sticks, remove it immediately.
- Please confirm the objects around the vehicle, because the displayed image may be blurred or dark. When the outside temperature is low, the moving image will be distorted or not clearly visible. When parking, always look around the vehicle by sight and with the rear view mirror.
- Do not use the reversing image system when the turn signal or emergency warning light is activated. If there are flashing lights around, turn off reversing image system. Flashing lights can cause a flashing picture on the screen, which may affect your observation of the environment, or even affect your parking, leading to an accident.

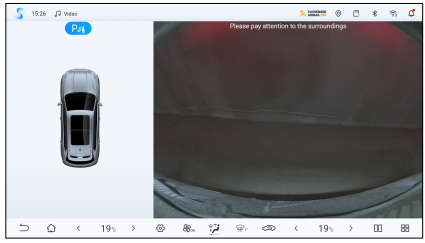
**Operation when reversing**

- Using the Reversing Image System
- When the power gear is in "OK" gear, shift the shift lever into "R" gear to start the reverse image mode.

**Reversing aid video screen***

The area shown varies with the vehicle's direction and road conditions

PAS is only for parking assistance. Do not rely too much on it. Make sure that there is enough space before reversing.




## Parking Assist System (PAS)

- During vehicle parking, the parking assist system (PAS) detects obstacles by sensors, and prompts the driver with the proximity of an obstacle by a distance indicator on the touchscreen and an alarm emitted through the speaker.
- PAS is a way to help reverse the vehicle. The driver should observe the surroundings while reversing.
- When the vehicle is shifted to R, the touchscreen automatically displays a reverse image.
- After reversing ends, the interface will be restored.

**WARNING**

- The parking assist system ceases to operate when the vehicle is moving at over 10 km/h or the D gear is engaged and kept over 10s.
- Do not place any articles within the sensors' working range.

**WARNING**

- Do not clean any sensor with water or steam, as doing so may ruin the sensor.

**REMINDER**

- The reversing safety line is for distance reference only when the vehicle is unladen.
- For your driving safety, when the reversing image is displayed, all buttons will be disabled except some volume and phone related buttons.

**Reversing Radar Power Switch**

- To activate or deactivate the Parking Sensors via enter multimedia touchscreen → Settings → ADAS → Parking Assist.



- When the power gear is "ON" or "OK", the EPB is released and the parking aid system is automatically turned on.
- When the parking assist system is enabled, the vehicle is not in Park, and the EPB and AVH are released, the obstacle detection mode of the parking assist system is enabled. When enabled, the system raises an alarm if obstacles are found surrounding the vehicle; when disabled, it does not.
- When the gear is "R", the reversing radar system cannot be turned off.

**Sensor Type**

- When a sensor detects an obstacle, the corresponding image is displayed on the touchscreen based on the orientation of the obstacle and the distance between the vehicle and the obstacle.
- The system can measure the distance between the vehicle and the obstacle and communicate the information through the multimedia control screen and speaker during parallel or shifting parking. When using the system, be sure to pay attention to surroundings.

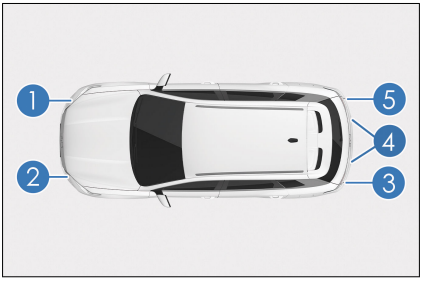
① Front right corner sensor*

② Front left corner sensor*

③ Rear left corner sensor

④ Rear left and right center sensors

⑤ Rear right corner sensor




**Distance Display Alarm**

When the sensor detects an obstacle, the multimedia control screen displays the orientation of the obstacle and the approximate distance between the vehicle and the obstacle, and the speaker may beep.

**Working Examples of Central Sensor**

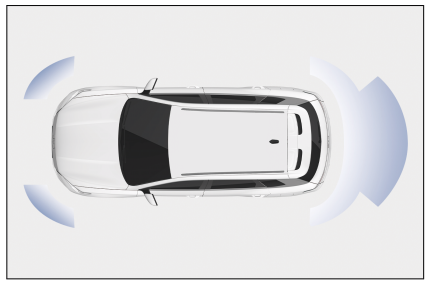
| Approximate Distance (mm) | Display examples on the multimedia control screen | Alarm Sound |
|---|---|---|
| About 700 to 1,200 |  | Slow |
| About 400 to 700 |  | Fast |
| About 200 to 400 |  | Constant beeping |

**Working Example of Corner Sensors**

| Approximate Distance (mm) | Display examples on the multimedia control screen | Alarm Sound |
|---|---|---|
| About 400 to 600 |  | Fast |
| About 200 to 400 |  | Constant beeping |

**CAUTION**

- 0 ~ 200mm is the blind area of the system, the detection accuracy is poor, and the alarm prompt information is not accurate enough, so the alarm prompt of this distance is for reference only.



**Working Sensors and Detection Range**

All sensors work when reversing.

- The detection range of the sensor is shown in the figure. The above detection range is limited. Before reversing, check the surroundings of the vehicle and then slowly reverse.

**REMINDER**

- The parking assist system is only for assistance, and is not a substitute for personal judgment.

**REMINDER**

Be sure to operate the vehicle based on your observations.

- Sensors will not work properly if accessories or other objects are placed within their detection range.
- In some cases, the system cannot operate properly and will fail to detect certain objects as the vehicle approaches them. Therefore, be sure to observe the vehicle's surroundings at all times. Do not rely solely upon the system.
- Failure of the parking radar system is indicated by the message " Parking radar failed, please contact BYD service" on the instrument cluster and a beep. In that case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection as soon as possible.

**Sensor Detecting Information**

- Certain vehicle conditions and surroundings may affect the performance of the sensor to accurately detect obstacles. Detection accuracy may be affected if:
  - There is dirt, accumulated water or fog on the sensor.
  - There is snow on the sensor or it is frozen.
  - The sensor is masked in any way.
  - The vehicle is significantly tilted or excessively overloaded.
  - The vehicle is moving on particularly bumpy roads, slopes, macadam or grass.
  - The sensor has been repainted.
  - It is very noisy in the vicinity of the vehicle due to the sound of vehicle horns, motorbike engines, the screech of brakes of large vehicles, or ultrasounds.
  - There's another vehicle equipped with parking assist system nearby.
  - The vehicle is fitted with a towing ring.
  - The bumper or sensor is strongly impacted.
  - The vehicle is approaching a high or zigzag curb.
  - The vehicle is in the hot sun or severely cold weather.
  - The installed suspension is not original and lower than the original ones.
- In addition to the above, the sensor may not be able to correctly determine the actual distance of some objects due to their specific shape.
- The shape and material of the obstacle may prevent the sensor from detecting it. Pay special attention to the following obstacles:
  - Electric wires, fences, ropes, etc.
  - Cotton, snow and other materials that absorb radio waves.
  - Oobject with sharp edges and corners.
  - Low obstacles.
  - High obstacles with the upper part extending outward towards the vehicle.
  - Object under the bumper.
  - Object too near the vehicle.
  - People in the vicinity of the vehicle (depending on the type of clothing).

- When the touchscreen displays an image or the speaker emits a chirping sound, it indicates that the sensor detects an obstacle or experiences external interference. If this persists, it is recommended to have it serviced at a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

**CAUTION**

- To prevent sensor malfunction, do not rinse or apply steam to the sensor area.

## Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

The direct TPMS is an auxiliary system that monitors the tire pressure in real time, improves the driving safety and comfort of the vehicle, and reduces the accelerated wear of tires and the increase of vehicle energy consumption caused by insufficient tire pressure.

**Tire pressure system alarm**

- When the pressure of any one of the four tires is lower than 85% of the standard tire pressure and the system is running, the tire pressure fault indicator lights up and the tire pressure value turns yellow. It is advisable to stop the vehicle and check the corresponding tires for slow leaks and to inflate them to a reasonable pressure.
- When the temperature of any one of the four tires is higher than 85°C for 3 consecutive minutes, the tire pressure system gives a high-temperature alarm, and the corresponding tire temperature indicator turns yellow. It is recommended to stop the vehicle and continue driving only after the tire temperature cools down.
- When the system is running, if a fault occurs, the tire pressure fault warning light is solid on after flashing, and the message "Abnormal signal" or "Please check the tire pressure monitoring system" is displayed on the instrument cluster. In that case, please check whether the corresponding tire pressure monitoring module is normal and whether it is within the range of a large electric field for a long time.

**How to use**

The user can access the instrument cluster menu by pressing the button on the steering wheel, navigate to the driving information bar by pressing the ◁ and ▷ buttons, and then select the tire pressure display interface using the roller on the button.

**WARNING**

- If the tire pressure is not normal, the system will not prevent the vehicle from traveling. Therefore, each time before driving, the vehicle should be started statically to check whether the tire pressure meets the requirements specified by the manufacturer. If not, do not drive the vehicle. Otherwise, the vehicle will be damaged or personal injury will occur.
- If pressure is found to be abnormal while driving, check the tire pressure immediately. If the low pressure warning light comes on, avoid sharp turns or emergency braking, and reduce vehicle speed, pull it over to the curb and stop as soon as possible. Driving with low tire pressure can cause permanent damage to tires and increase the likelihood of tire scrapping. Serious tire damage can lead to traffic accidents,

**WARNING**

resulting in serious injuries or deaths.

**CAUTION**

- The service time of the tire pressure monitoring module is related to the daily driving distance and other related factors.
- The tire pressure monitoring module transmits tire pressure and other information to the display regularly.Therefore, if the tire pressure suddenly drops or there is a flat tire, the monitoring module can only transmit data to the display in the next monitoring. Therefore, it may cause the driving to be out of control. If a damaged tire is accompanied by the monitoring module damage and thus no message can be sent, or if it is suspected that a tire has been damaged, stop driving immediately, instead of waiting for the display to send an alarm signal.
- Incorrect installation of the tire pressure monitoring module affects the air tightness of the tires. It is recommended that the monitoring module be installed and replaced by professional technicians from a BYD authorized dealer or service provider according to the installation instructions.
- Since tire pressure varies with regional temperatures, inflate or deflate the tires according to the values displayed on the instrument cluster and the standard tire pressure value.
- If the vehicle is equipped with electrical accessories not approved by BYD, the tire pressure monitoring system may be disturbed. In this case, do not misunderstand it as a tire pressure system fault.
- For wheel rim replacement, spare tire* installation, or tire rotation for the four wheels, the tire pressure system should be reset. Please drive the vehicle to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for resetting.

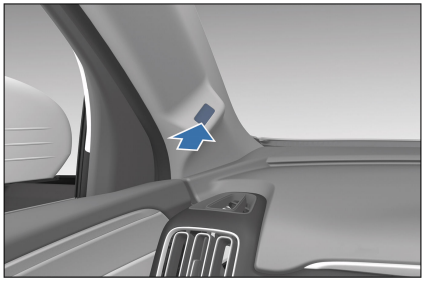
**CAUTION**

## Driver Monitoring System (DMS)*

The Driver Monitoring System (DMS) includes fatigue monitoring and distraction monitoring functions. It mainly monitors the driver's state in real time through the camera of the driver monitoring assistant system and makes a judgment. According to the judgment result, it reminds the driver to drive carefully and pay attention to driving safety (the original monitoring data will be deleted immediately after the judgment is completed, and will not be saved or uploaded to the server).

### How to Use

- The driver monitoring assistant system camera is located in the A-pillar of the main driver. The driver monitoring assistant system camera is located in the A-pillar of the main driver. When the camera is blocked, the function cannot be used normally.



- Users can enable or diable the fatigue driving warning and distraction driving warning functions through multimedia touchscreen → Settings ⚙ → Vehicle → Cabin Perception, which are enable by default when leaving the factory. Driver Monitoring System is on by default each time the vehicle is powered up.

**Fatigue Driving Warning**

- When the vehicle speed meets the function activation conditions and the fatigue monitoring button is set to "ON", and when the system detects that the driver has fatigue driving (such as closing eyes, blinking, yawning, etc. Meet certain conditions), it will remind the driver through the instrument, intelligent voice, alarm sound, etc.

**Distraction Driving Warning**

- When the vehicle speed meets the function activation conditions and the position of the distraction monitoring button is "on", and when the system detects that the driver is distracted (for example, the left rearview mirror and the right rearview mirror meet certain conditions), it will remind the driver through the instrument, intelligent voice, alarm sound, etc.

**REMINDER**

- It is recommended to use a mild and clean cotton cloth to wipe the lens of the camera of the driver monitoring assistant system, and pay attention to avoid scratching the lens.

**Precautions**

- Driver monitoring is an auxiliary system, which can not ensure that it can effectively identify and warn in any case. It cannot completely replace the driver's subjective observation and judgment. The driver must maintain control of the vehicle at all times, complying with all road laws and regulations, and taking full responsibility for the vehicle.
- The functionality and accuracy of the Driver Monitoring Assistance System may be affected by a number of factors, including but not limited to:
  - The Driver Monitoring Assist function is disabled.
  - The driver monitoring system camera is directly illuminated by strong light.
  - The driver's face is partially illuminated by light or the facial features are incomplete.
  - The driver wears infrared blocking glasses or glasses with thick lenses for high myopia.
  - The driver wears a mask or other objects to cover his face.
  - The abnormal sitting posture of the driver is beyond the normal driving posture range, or the driver's face is within the blind area of the camera.

**WARNING**

- The driver should pull over the vehicle as soon as possible when feeling tired.

## Child Presence Detection (CPD)

After the vehicle is powered off, child presence detection is performed if any door is opened and then all doors are closed or locked. If life is detected, the system will alert by flashing the lights and honking the horn, and start the air conditioner to adjust the temperature. The reminder can be cancelled by opening the door.

**Activation conditions**

- The CPD system starts to work when all the following conditions are met:
  - Power off the vehicle;
  - After the vehicle is stationary, the main driving door is opened and then closed;
  - All doors of the vehicle are closed;
  - CPD function switch setting item is on;
  - CPD system has no fault.

**How to Use**

- The user can enter the setting interface through the multimedia touchscreen → Settings → Cabin Perception → Child Presence Detection.
- There are four kinds of function switch settings: "ON", "OFF", "STANDARD" and "DELAY".
- Every time the vehicle is powered on, the system defaults to the "ON" and "STANDARD" states.
  - When "Close" is selected, the child legacy monitoring function is closed;
  - When "Delay" is selected, this reminder will be triggered after a delay of about 5 minutes.

**Precautions**

Initial Reminder

- When the function is turned on and set to "Standard", when the door is closed and the vehicle is locked, the system detects that a living body is left in the vehicle for the first time, and the initial reminder (flashing lights and whistling) starts within 15 seconds, lasting for about 6 seconds;
- When the function is turned on and set to "Standard", when the door is closed and the vehicle is not locked, the system detects that the life body is left in the vehicle for the first time, and starts the primary reminder (flashing lights and whistling) within 5 minutes, lasting for about 6 seconds;
- When the function is turned on and set to "Delay", when the door is powered off and the system detects the life left in the vehicle for the first time, the primary warning (flashing lights and whistling) starts within 5 minutes and lasts for about 6 seconds.

Upgrade reminder

- If the reminder is not cancelled, the reminder will be upgraded (flashing lights and horns) after about 80 seconds, and the duration will be about 25 minutes.

Interventions

- If the reminder is not cancelled, the air conditioner will be turned on about 3 minutes after the reminder

is upgraded, and the air conditioner will run for about 30 minutes; after 30 minutes, if the radar still detects that life is left, it will turn on the air conditioner again and run for about 30 minutes; this process will be repeated for 8 times, and the air conditioning will run for 4 hours at most.

Reminder cancelled

- When the reminder is triggered, you can cancel all reminders in this power-off cycle (from this power-off to the next power-on) through the pad wallpaper prompt button;
- When the reminder is triggered, the current reminder can be cancelled by unlocking the vehicle or opening any door.

Message push

- At the beginning of the upgrade reminder and intervention, the system will push the reminder information to the user App and send the email reminder to the user.

**WARNING**

- The system can timely notify the owner by flashing lights, honking horns, App push messages, email reminders, air conditioning and other means to reduce the harm of life in the car, but the child legacy detection system is an auxiliary system, which can not ensure that the user can be effectively identified and reminded in any case. Users should always pay attention to the life in the car and take full responsibility for the safety of the life.
- After the system sends out a reminder, please confirm whether there is a living body locked in

**WARNING**

the car in time to avoid safety accidents.

**CAUTION**

- The CPD system for children left behind belongs to the assistant reminder function. When there are other living bodies left behind in the vehicle, there may be missing reminders. Users should always pay attention to the living bodies in the vehicle, especially minor children, and take full responsibility for the safety of the living bodies.
- The alarm may be given for adults, children, pets, or other lives detected.
- When the system recognizes that there is a moving object in the vehicle, it may be reminded.
- The system does not support remote unlocking through mobile APP to cancel the reminder.
- In the case of low battery of the vehicle, it may not be possible to trigger the upgrade reminder or turn on the air conditioner. It is recommended to keep the vehicle fully charged.

## Driving Safety Systems

For better driving safety, the following driving safety systems works automatically based on driving conditions. However, it is important to remember that these systems are only auxiliary and should not be relied on excessively during driving.

**Intelligent Power Braking System**

The intelligent power braking system is an advanced decoupled electro-hydraulic braking system, incorporating vacuum booster, electronic vacuum pump, and ABS/ESC functionality. The system can provide power for vehicle braking "on demand" according to the driver's braking demand, and can provide advanced control functions such as ABS, EBD, VDC, TCS, HHC, RMI, HBA, CDP, HDC, CST, etc. To improve vehicle stability and comfort and enhance the efficiency of braking energy recovery.

**Vehicle Dynamics Control (VDC)**

When the vehicle turns suddenly while running, the VDC system judges the driver's intention based on such information as steering wheel's angle and vehicle speed, and continuously compares with the actual condition. If the vehicle swerves from the normal lane, the VDC corrects the situation by engaging brakes to the corresponding wheels to help the driver control skidding and maintain directional stability.

**Traction Control System (TCS)**

TCS prevents drive wheels from slipping during acceleration by reducing the engine power. It also applies braking forces when necessary to prevent drive wheels from idling. It makes the vehicle easy to start, accelerate, and climb under adverse driving conditions.

**WARNING**

- TCS may not work effectively in the following situations:
  - When the vehicle is running on a wet and slippery road, TCS may be unable to control the direction and meet the power requirements, even if it is functional;

**WARNING**

- Do not drive in conditions where the vehicle may lose its stability and power.

**Hill Descent Control (HHC)**

After the brake pedal is released, HHC maintains brake pressure for one second to prevent backward sliding.

**Roll Movement Intervention (RMI)**

When the vehicle turns, RMI judges whether there is a risk of rollover by monitoring the motion state of the vehicle. If so, the RMI will brake and decelerate one or more wheels to prevent the vehicle from rollover.

**CAUTION**

- RMI is only an auxiliary function, which can not completely avoid the risk of rollover, and the driver should be responsible for the safety of the vehicle at all times.

**Hydraulic Brake Assist (HBA)**

When you press the brake pedal quickly, HBA detects that the vehicle is in emergency condition. It quickly increases the brake pressure to the maximum so that ABS can intervene more quickly and shorten the braking distance effectively.

**Controlled Deceleration for Parking Brake (CDP)**

When the "P" switch is pressed continuously or the EPB switch is pulled continuously, the CDP function starts to work, and the vehicle will brake at a constant deceleration until the vehicle stops. If the driver releases the "P" switch or the EPB switch, the CDP function will stop working.

**Hill Descent Control (HDC)**

- Working principle: The hill descent control (HDC), an added feature of the ESC system, is designed to improve vehicle comfort. The user can enable and disable the Hill Descent Control through the multimedia touchscreen → Settings → Vehicle → Intelligent Assist → Driving Assist. The main function of which is to assist in uphill and downhill slow driving through active braking. When HDC is working, ABS is activated when the wheel slip exceeds the ABS triggering threshold, allowing you to safely and smoothly go downhill, or even reverse.
- Activate HDC:
  - When the vehicle speed is lower than 38 km/h, activate the HDC and state indicator on the instrument cluster stays on.
- HDC speed control:
  - HDC works at speeds between 11 km/h and 38 km/h, within which you can adjust the speed by pressing/releasing the accelerator or brake pedal. The vehicle speed is set when the accelerator or brake pedal is released. The HDC status indicator flashes to indicate that the HDC is working.
- Disable HDC:
  - Deactive the HDC, and the indicator on the instrument cluster goes out immediately.
  - HDC also automatically stops when the speed exceeds about 65 km/h.
- HDC malfunction:
  - In some special conditions, such as at a long stretches downhill, the HDC function may be temporarily unavailable due to high brake temperature.
  - A "Please check the HDC system" message is displayed for safety. To restore the function, stop the vehicle until the brake temperature cools down.

**Intelligent power braking system has the following new functions compared with the original ESC system:**

- Brake assist mode
  - The brake booster mode is used to adjust the brake booster. In different modes, the relationship curve between the brake booster depth and the vehicle deceleration is different, and the driver can choose the braking style he likes.
  - The user can set it through the interface of multimedia touchscreen → Settings → Vehicle → Driving Control → Steering and Braking. The Brake Assist Mode includes two modes of Comfort and Sport.
- Comfort Parking (CST)
  - Comfort parking function: When the vehicle decelerates and stops in a non-emergency situation, the intelligent power brake system reduces the suspension pitch and impact at the moment of stopping by controlling the braking pressure of the four brakes, providing the driver with smooth parking.
  - Users can choose to turn on or off the comfortable parking function through the multimedia touchscreen → Vehicle → Driving Control → Steering and Braking setting interface.
  - After the comfortable parking function is triggered, the braking distance may be slightly increased by 2 ~ 5cm, so please increase the distance from the vehicle in front or the obstacle in front before parking.
- Brake disc wiping

- Brake disc wiping function: When the wiper switch is turned on or the rain is detected by the rain sensor, the intelligent dynamic braking system applies a small braking pressure to the four brakes to make the brake pad contact with the brake disc and remove the water film on the brake disc, so as to achieve the purpose of reducing the braking response time and shortening the braking distance.
- As long as the system detects rain or wiper on signal, it will wipe the brake disc repeatedly after a certain interval to improve safety.

**ESC Operation Instructions**

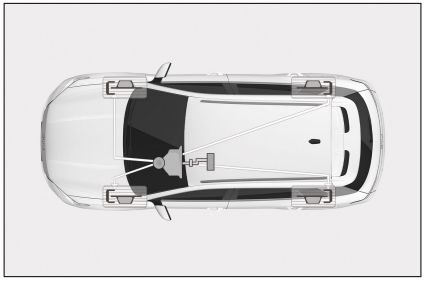
- ESC working
  - If there is a risk of skidding or backsliding when the vehicle starts on a slope, or if either drive wheel is spinning, the ESC indicator flashes to indicate that ESC system is working.
- Disable ESC
  - If the vehicle gets stuck in snow or mud, ESC may reduce the power output from the motor to wheels. Activate the snow mode to get out of the jam.
- Turning off ESC
  - Users can choose to turn on or off the ESC OFF through the multimedia touchscreen → Settings → Vehicle → Driving Control → Steering and Braking. ESC also checks its operating status in real time. If the ESC system is working and the ESC OFF is turned off by pressing the ESC OFF button at this time, the ESC system will not immediately execute the "off" command, but will first complete the active intervention control this time. After the intervention control is completed, the ESC system will execute the electronic body stability off command.
  - After the electronic body stability system is turned off, if the "electronic body stability system off" button is pressed again or the vehicle speed exceeds the threshold (80km/h), some functions of the ESC system that have been turned off will be turned on again. In order to prevent ESC from being turned off suddenly, ESC can be activated again only when it is not in a vehicle dynamic intervention state.
- Restarting ESC after the vehicle is powered off
  - When the ESC system has been turned off, restarting the vehicle will automatically restart ESC system.
- ESC system start and speed linkage
  - If the ESC system is turned off, when the vehicle becomes extremely unstable as the speed increases and exceeds the threshold (80 km/h), the ESC system starts on its own.
- ESC activated
  - If the ESC fault indicator flashes, be sure to drive carefully, because careless driving may cause an accident.
- With ESC system disabled
  - Be careful when ESC is disabled, and drive at speeds suitable for road conditions. The ESC system ensures vehicle stability and its driving force. Never turn it off unless necessary.
- Tire replacement
  - Make sure all tires are of the same size, brand, tread, and total load. In addition, be sure to inflate tires to the recommended pressure.

- Neither ABS nor ESC will work properly if the vehicle is fitted with different tires.
- For details on tire or wheel replacement, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

- Tire and suspension handling
  - The use of any defective tire or modified suspension affects the driving safety system and may cause the system to fail.

### Anti-lock Braking System

- The ABS hydraulic system has two separate circuits. Each circuit passes through the vehicle diagonally (the front left wheel brake is connected with the rear right wheel brake, etc.) and acts. If one circuit fails, two wheels can still be braked. If one circuit fails, two wheels can still be braked.
- In case of a sudden brake or application of brake on a slippery road, ABS helps to prevent the wheels from locking, so that you can keep the steering control.



- When the ABS is working, the instrument ESC fault warning light will flash, you will feel the brake pedal vibrate, and you may hear a noise. This is because the ABS is pulsating the brake quickly, which is normal. At this time, always depress the brake pedal. Do not depress the brake pedal repeatedly in a pulsating manner. Otherwise, the ABS will not work properly. When turning the steering wheel to avoid danger, always maintain strong and stable pressure on the brake pedal so that ABS functions.

### Electronic Brakeforce Distribution (EBD)

- The EBD function is an auxiliary function of the ABS. Before the ABS acts, the ABS system will regulate the braking pressure on the rear wheels if the slip rate of the rear wheels is high, so as to get a smoother and closer to idealized brake force distribution.

**WARNING**

- ABS cannot work effectively under the following conditions:
  - Tires used do not have a sufficient grip level (e.g., excessively worn tires are used on snow-covered roads);
  - The vehicle skids when driving at a high speed on slippery roads.
- ABS is not designed to reduce the braking distance of the vehicle. Always keep a safe distance from the vehicle ahead when:
  - Driving on muddy, sandy or snowy roads;
  - Driving on uneven roads or with multiple potholes;
  - Bumpy roads.

**CAUTION**

- If the ABS fault warning light is still on while the braking system warning light is on, immediately park the vehicle in a safe place.

**CAUTION**

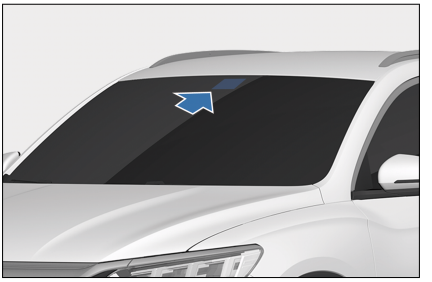
It is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

- In this case, if brakes are applied, the ABS will not work and the vehicle will become extremely unstable.
- ABS cannot reduce the time and distance required to brake the vehicle. This device only helps you control steering when braking. Please always keep a safe distance from other vehicles.
- ABS does not prevent decrease in stability either. When applying the brake in an emergency, the steering should be moderate. A large or sharp turn during the driving can cause the vehicle to swerve into oncoming traffic or run off the road.
- ABS cannot prevent skidding caused by sudden direction change, such as trying to make a sharp turn or change lanes suddenly. Always drive carefully at a safe speed, regardless of road and weather conditions.
- Vehicles equipped with ABS may require a longer braking distance than vehicles without ABS when driving on wet or soft or uneven surfaces such as waterlogged cement, waterlogged epoxy paint, gravel, snow, etc. In such cases, reduce the vehicle speed and keep a greater distance from other vehicles.

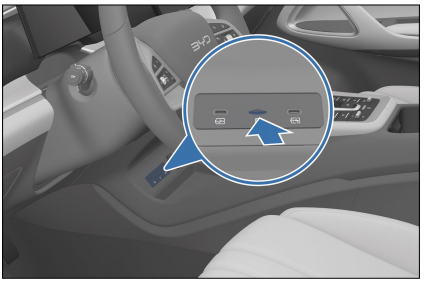
# Other Main Functions

## Vehicle Travelling Data Recorder*

- The driving recorder camera is located in the upper middle of the front windshield.



- The lower layer of the auxiliary dashboard is equipped with a dedicated SD card slot for driving recorder. See the illustration in the figure.



**CAUTION**

- Insert the card vertically;
- After inserting the card for a few moments, if a red dot flashing on the recorder interface, it indicates that the card has been recognized and begins to work normally.

**CAUTION**

If it is not recognized or the viedo is not written properly, "Please insert the storage card" is displayed;

- It is recommended to use a special card with 32G capacity and below, or an original card;
- Since 64GB and 128GB TF cards in market are generally non-FAT32 format, it is required to converted them into FAT32 format after inserting the cards;
- Before pulling out the card, you must click to stop recording or turn off the multimedia host, otherwise it is easy to damage the video file.

**Real Time Image**

- To enable or disable Driving Recorder, go to multimedia touchscreen → Driving Recorder.
- The system defaults to the previous settings when the vehicle starts.
- The driving recorder has three operation interfaces: "Real time image", "Playback list" and "Settings", for you to consult and set the driving information.

**Control Icons**


: starts recording


: stops recording


: takes a picture


: locks the video being recorded, or starts emergency recording

**Operation Conditions**


: normal recording status


: faults happen on driving recorder


: TF card recognized, but recording does not start


: TF card not recognized (card is not inserted or fails)

Playback list interface of driving recorder:

- The playback list includes driving video, locking video and picture modules.

Settings screen:

- Tap "Delete data" to clear all data in the general video file folder of the drving recoder.
- Tap "Display drving info. on recording" to record driving information in video.
- Tap "Format" to reformat SD card. This action clears all data and formats the card to FAT32.

# 05 IN-VEHICLE DEVICES

Multimedia System.....200
A/C System.....203
BYD App.....208
Storage Device.....210
Other Devices.....212

# Multimedia System

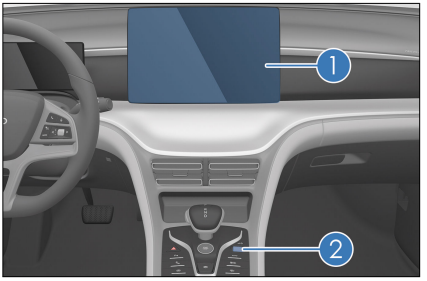
## Multimedia Touchscreen

When the ignition is on, the initial screen is displayed for several seconds and the multimedia system starts to work.

A warning is displayed when the multimedia system starts for the first time. Tap "Agree" to enter the system.

① Multimedia touchscreen

② Multimedia switch/Scroll button




**Factory Reset:**

- The user can restore the factory settings by enter multimedia touchscreen → Settings → System → Version Management → Factory Restore → Restore button.
- This function factory resets the multimedia system.
  - During the process, do not touch any multimedia button or turn off the power supply, or errors may occur.
  - The process takes two to five minutes.

**WARNING**

- To avoid faults in the multimedia system, do not use a high-power inverter on the vehicle.

**WARNING**

- Do not format or root the device without authorization, as this may cause multimedia system or vehicle malfunction.

**CAUTION**

- To prevent damage to the touchscreen:
  - Touch the screen gently. If there is no response, remove finger from the screen, then touch it again.
  - Clean the screen with a soft damp cloth. Do not use any cleaning product.
- Using the touchscreen
  - When the screen temperature is low, the image displayed may be darker or the system may work slightly slower than normal.
  - The screen may be dark or difficult to see when you are wearing sunglasses. In that case, change the viewing angle or take off the sunglasses.
  - The touchscreen buttons that are grayed out cannot be operated.
- The touchscreen interface shown here is for reference only.
- To better experience multimedia functions, such as voice control and apps, the system must be used after network connection.
- In case of multimedia failure, please contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for handling.

## Navigation Bar

Long press the navigation bar to call up the control menu and application, and users can set the navigation bar according to their personal needs.

: Returns to the previous page or exits the program.

: Returns to the homepage.

: Goes to vehicle setting screen.

: Splits screen if applications support.

: Click the application center button to enter the application list interface;

: Click the Recent Tasks button to view the recently opened applications;

: Click the screen-off button, and the screen enters the screensaver state.

## Gestures and Responses

Gestures and Responses:

- Tapping: To open an application, select a function, press a key on the screen, or enter a character using the screen keys, simply tap with your finger.
- Drag: To move an icon, thumbnail, or preview to a new location, hold and drag it to the desired location and release.
- Slide: This can be done on the main page or the application interface.
- Double tapping: zoom in or out an image.
- Spreading/pinching: Zooms in or out an image with two fingers.
- Three-finger touch screen slide left/right: Adjust the air volume of the air conditioner.
- Three-finger touch screen slide up/down: Adjust the temperature of the air conditioner.
- Swipe down the top of the touchscreen: open quick menu.
- Slide up the bottom of the screen: open task management center.

## OTA Upgrade

- The vehicle has the function of software upgrade. Prompt information will be sent when the vehicle needs software update to remind you to upgrade the software. You can start the system software upgrade in any way of immediate upgrade or appointment upgrade on the touchscreen or BYD App according to the vehicle situation, so that your vehicle functions are in the latest state.
  - Operation method of multimedia touchscreen: This vehicle has the function of software upgrade. You can upgrade the vehicle system by clicking multimedia touchscreen→ → System → Vehicle Version → Update, so that your vehicle functions are in the latest state.
  - Operation method of BYD App: By clicking on BYD App → App Interface → More Functions → OTA Upgrade, you can enter the mobile phone upgrade interface.

**CAUTION**

- Ensure that the vehicle is parked in a safe area, the gear is in "P" gear, and the mobile communication network is connected to the normal state before the OTA Upgrade starts.
- The vehicle cannot be charged or discharged during the upgrade.

**CAUTION**

Please ensure that the vehicle has sufficient power before upgrading.

- Before or during the OTA upgrade, do not install any third-party equipment at the OBD port of the vehicle.
- During OTA upgrade, all functions are inoperable except vehicle locking/unlocking, interior light switch, emergency warning light and window switch.
- If the OTA upgrade fails, please retry it. If it fails again, please call BYD Customer Service or contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for handling.
- If the OTA upgrade fails and the fault warning lights (such as parking brake fault warning light, ABS fault warning light, power system fault warning light) on the instrument are on abnormally, please do not drive the vehicle, and contact the BYD authorized dealer or service provider to check the vehicle status as soon as possible.

**REMINDER**

- The upgrade operation path may be slightly different from the actual path of the multimedia system and mobile App. Please refer to the actual path for details.
- After the OTA upgrade is completed, some functions of the vehicle may be changed. You can click the new version number to view the upgrade description and learn about the updated functions again.

## BYD Assistant

BYD assistant supports operations including controlling vehicle navigation, playing music, turning on the A/C System and calling.

- How to wake up BYD Assistant:
  - Click the button on the steering wheel ***P70*** (make a linkage jump with the steering wheel switch group)
  - Tap the voice icon on the touchscreen desktop.
  - Say the wake word: "Hi, BYD".
- Your speech instruction can be recognized after the wake-up.
- Make a request as you like.
  - For example: Users can say "Navigate to the Citizen Center", "I want to listen to Jay Chou's songs", "Call the xxx" "to adjust the temperature to 23 degrees", “Driver seat heating" and so on, and the voice assistant will execute the corresponding operation after successfully recognizing the instructions.

## Bluetooth Call

### Bluetooth Connection

1. On Bluetooth Call screen, tap "Bluetooth Connection" to establish connection.
2. Tap Scanning to search for available device.
3. Pair the available device, and make sure the paring code displayed on your phone is consistent with the code on the touchscreen.
4. After successful connection, you can make various common settings for Bluetooth.

**Bluetooth Call**

Go to the dialing screen when Bluetooth is connected.

- Tap contacts, call log, and missed calls, or use dial keypad to make a call.
- Scroll up the call card/click in the blank area to zoom out on the dialing page.
- In panoramic view screen, a small window pops up to inform driver of a call.

## File Management

**New Folder**

- Go to file management screen to create new folders. Enter the name of the new folder at the cursor and click "OK". Click "Cancel" to terminate the new folder.
- Tap the top of the file management screen to change file sources.

**Search**

- Tap "Search" on the upper left corner and enter file names to search for target files.

**Cut/Copy**

- Touch and hold any file, select target files and operation (copy, move or delete), and then go to the edit status.

**Rename**

- Long press any file icon on the main interface, select Rename in the pop-up dialog box, select the folder to be renamed, type the folder name in the pop-up prompt box, and click "OK".

**Delete**

- Long press any file, select files, and then tap it to delete.

**Sort**

- The files are sorted by name by default, and the user can also sort the files by name, size, type and time.

**Attributes**

- Long press any file, select a file, and then tap “Details” to check its attributes.

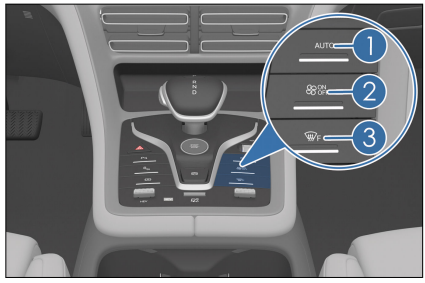
# A/C System

## A/C Control Panel

① Automatic A/C button

② A/C ON/OFF

③ Defrosting button for front windshield




**REMINDER**

- Remote A/C activation:
  - The user can turn on the A/C through the remote control key or BYD App to gain a comfortable interior environment in advance.

# A/C Settings Interface

### A/C Operation Interface




| | |
|---|---|
| 1 | A/C ON/OFF |
| 2 | Automatic A/C Button |
| 3 | Cooling Button |
| 4 | Ventilation Button |
| 5 | Recirculation/Fresh Air Button |
| 6 | Defrosting Button for Front Windshield |
| 7 | Defroster for Rear Windshield & Side Mirrors |
| 8 | Maximum Cooling Button |
| 9 | A/C Settings Button |
| 10 | Driver Climate Control Button |
| 11 | Blowing Mode |
| 12 | Front Passenger Climate Control Button |
| 13 | Synchronization Button |
| 14 | Blower Speed Adjustment |

### A/C Settings Interface

- To access the A/C setting interface, go to multimedia touchscreen → A/C button → Settings → A/C interface.
- Auto A/C Mode
  - Economical and Comfort modes are available.
- Remotely controlled air conditioner running time (mins)
  - Tap this button to set the time for remote A/C running.
- Auto Air Recirculation when Parking
  - Tap this button to enable this setting.
  - Tap this button a second time to disable it.
- Fan Speed Reduction during Calls

- Tap this button to enable the Fan speed reduction during calls.
- Tap this button a second time to disable it.

## Function Definition

**A/C ON/OFF**

- Tap this button to disable the A/C if it is ON.
- Tap this button to enable the A/C if it is OFF.

**Automatic A/C Button**

- Press this button to automatically adjust the compressor status, air volume and blowing mode.
- The vehicle exits auto control if fan speed or air distribution is set, and other functions remain in auto mode except for those that have been operated.

**Ventilation Button**

- Press the "Ventilation" button, the air conditioner enters the ventilation control, and the air outlet is natural air.
- Tap this button again to exit.

**Cooling Button**

- Tap this button for cooling.
- Tap this button a second time to disable it.

**Maximum Cooling Button**

- Tap this button to switch the A/C to the maximum cooling control mode. The temperature is set to "Lo", the fan speed is set to the maximum, the recirculation mode is activated, and air is directed to face level.
- Tap this button again to exit the maximum cooling control mode.

**Recirculation/Fresh Air Button**

- Tap the internal and external circulation button to change the air inlet mode from external circulation to internal circulation, and the air inlet mode is internal circulation.
- Press this button again, the air inlet mode changes from internal circulation to external circulation, and the air inlet mode is external circulation.

**REMINDER**

- When the Auto air recirculation when parking is enabled, the vehicle switches to the recirculation mode automatically during parking to ensure the air quality in the vehicle and avoid the exhaust from entering the vehicle.

**Defrosting Button for Front Windshield**

- Tap this button to enter the front windshield defrost mode, distributing air to the front windshield, The corresponding indicator on the front A/C panel lights up.
- Tap this button again to deactivate and exit the front windshield defroster control mode. The corresponding indicator on the front A/C panel turns off.

**Defroster for Rear Windshield & Side Mirrors**

- Tap this button to heat up and defrost the rear windshield and side mirrors. The function is automatically deactivated after 15-minute inactivity of the associated button.
- Tap this button again to turn off the rear windshield defroster and the external rearview mirror defroster.

- This function cannot be used to dry rain drops and melt snow.

**WARNING**

- As the surface of the rear windshield and exterior rearview mirror will become hot, do not touch the rear windshield and exterior rearview mirror after opening the rear defrosting button.

**CAUTION**

- Using this function for a long time may cause premature aging of the lens. Please turn off the defrosting button in time when it is not needed.

**Synchronization Button**

- Tap this key to switch from standalone mode to associative mode.
  - Independent mode: The temperatures on the driver's side and the front passenger's side can be set separately. When the standalone mode is selected, the key icon is illuminated.
  - Associated mode: The set temperature of the driver's side and the passenger's side can be adjusted at the same time through the driver's temperature adjustment button. In association mode, the key icon is grayed out.
- In association mode, operating the front passenger climate control automatically switches to the independent mode.

**Blowing Mode Button**

- Tap an icon on the multimedia system screen to select the corresponding blowing mode.
- You can turn on multiple modes (up to three) simultaneously by using the touchscreen.
- It can be adjusted according to the following air outlet diagram.

: Air is blown onto the front windshield and side windows.

: Air flows to the face level.

: Air flows to the foot level.



**Blower Speed Adjustment**

- Tap this button to adjust the blower speed to an appropriate level. The higher the level is, the greater the blower speed is.

**Usage Precautions**

- If you need to cool the vehicle parked in the hot sun as soon as possible, you can open the windows and drive for a few minutes to help exhaust the hot air and speed up the cooling of the air conditioner in the vehicle.
- If fast cooling is required, the temperature can be adjusted to "Lo", and the air inlet mode is selected for internal circulation for a period of time.
- If rapid cooling/warming is required, the maximum cooling/warming mode can be turned on, and the air conditioner will automatically enter

the best cooling/heating operation state to ensure that the interior environment can quickly achieve comfort.

- If the air conditioning effect is not in line with expectations, it is recommended to turn on the automatic mode of the air conditioner. In this mode, the air conditioner will automatically adjust to the appropriate air outlet temperature, mode and windshield to meet the comfort needs of passengers.
- Make sure that the air inlet grille in front of the front windshield is not blocked (by such things as leaves or snow).
- In humid weather, do not let the cold air blow on the windshield, because the temperature difference between the inside and outside of the windshield will cause the windshield to fog.
- Keep the space under the front seats unoccupied so that the air in the vehicle can be fully circulated.
- In cold weather, the fan speed is recommended to be set to a high speed for one minute to remove snow or moisture from the intake channel, so as to reduce fogging of the window.
- In cold weather, in order to warm up the carriage as soon as possible, the internal circulation can be selected for several minutes. To prevent the windows from fogging up, switch to fresh air mode after the temperature in the compartment rises.
- In dusty or windy driving conditions, close all windows, set the air intake mode to internal circulation, and turn on the air conditioning fan.
- When heating, press the compressor control icon to light it up (the compressor is turned on), reducing the moisture in the airflow.
- In ventilation mode, the system introduces the natural wind outside the vehicle, so it is suitable for spring and autumn.

**REMINDER**

- Odor of A/C:
  - When the air conditioner is just turned on, the air supply of the air conditioner may have the odor of moisture and mildew, which is a normal phenomenon. This is because in the process of using the air conditioner, the evaporator is easy to adhere to the condensed water of the air conditioning, absorb the unfiltered human sweat and smoke in the car, and the wet surface of the evaporator is easy to breed poisonous bacteria, which is easy to produce odor after a long time of fermentation.
- Methods to prevent and reduce odor of A/C:
  - Turn off the A/C and ventilate with natural air before parking to keep the air inside the vehicle relatively dry.
  - Inspect, clean, or replace the filter regularly.
  - Try to keep the cabin clean and fresh.
- Please contact with BYD authorised dealer or service provider for check if the odor cannot be prevented.
- In order to reduce odors from the A/C, if the A/C is already turned on, the A/C blower may

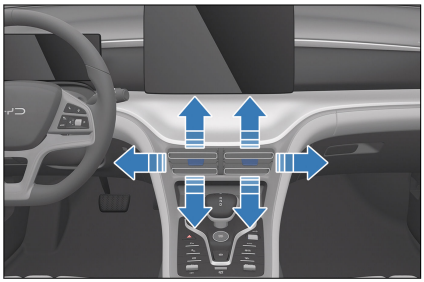
**REMINDER**

keep running for a while after the vehicle is powered off and locked. That is because the condensed water on the surface of the evaporator needs to be dried to prevent mold fermentation.

## A/C Vents

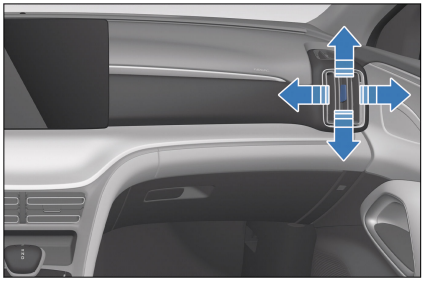
**Front Center Vent**

The venting angle can be adjusted by toggling adjusting sheets in the center of vents, and vents can be closed by toggling adjusting sheets left and right to the limit.



**Front Side Vents**

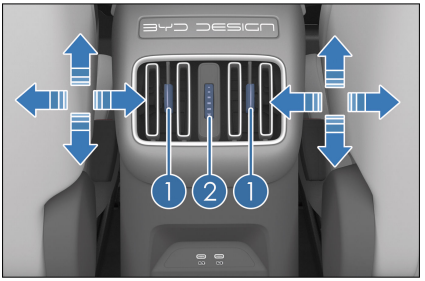
The venting angle can be adjusted by toggling adjusting sheets in the left/right vent, and vents can be closed by toggling adjusting sheets up and down to the limit.



**Rear Side Vents**

① The venting angle can be adjusted by toggling adjusting sheets in the vents.

② The vents can be adjusted or turned on/off by toggling the roller.




# BYD App

## About BYD App

- BYD app is a mobile application of Internet of Vehicle (IoV) developed by BYD independently. It allows you to control the vehicle remotely and check vehicle conditions, delivering cloud era experience of IoV.
- Search for "BYD" in Google Play or App Store to download and install BYD App.

GET IT ON Google Play

Download on the App Store

## Account Registration

After downloading and installing the BYD App, register and log in to your account through the mobile guide by following the steps below.

1. After starting the App, click "Register" to enter the Register interface;
2. Enter email address registered in BYD authorized dealer, tap "Send email" to receive verification code, and then enter the code in app.
3. Set your password in password setting screen to complete the registration, and then the homepage is displayed.

**CAUTION**

- Provide the email address registered at the BYD authorized dealer, or registration will fail.
- In the app, select a country or region on upper right corner of the screen. The default setting depends on your phone setting. If it is not where you make the purchase, choose the right one, otherwise your data will not be accessible.

## Vehicle Condition and Control

The BYD App homepage provides information and control items of the vehicle.

1. The homepage shows remaining driving range, SOC, vehicle error information, and status of vehicle driving, charging, A/C system, seat heater, and tire pressure.
2. Tap lock, unlock, light flashing & honking, or light flashing button to activate the corresponding function.
3. The air conditioner can be started or closed on the home page, or click the card to enter the air conditioner control page to set the temperature.
4. At the bottom of the homepage, tap the icon of seats, doors and windows, or tires to go to the associated screen and check their status.
5. If you have multiple vehicles on an account, tap the vehicle name in the upper left corner of the screen to switch between vehicles.

**CAUTION**

- The control function of the app is mainly for remote use. To use this function, ensure your phone and vehicle are connected to the Internet.

## Individual Center and Vehicle Management

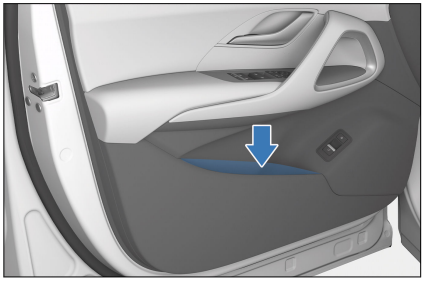
Tap the icon on the upper right corner to go to the individual center.

- Vehicle management: changes vehicle name and license plate number.
- Account and security: recovers or changes your password.
- Settings: sets message reception, automatic login, and other items.
- About us: includes privacy policy and information to contact us and give feedback.

# Storage Device

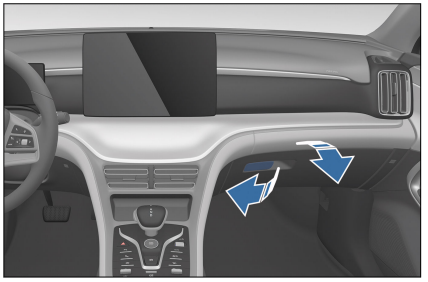
## Door Bins

There is a door bin on each door for storage of beverage bottles or small items.



## Glove Box

- Pull the handle to open the glovebox. The light in the glovebox goes on when it is opened.
- Push the glovebox up to close. The light in the glovebox goes off when it is closed.

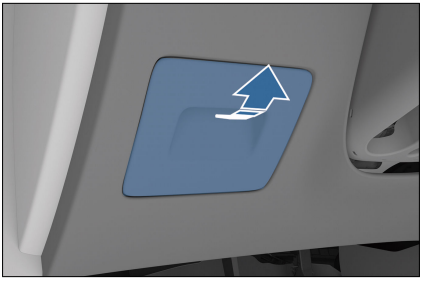


**REMINDER**

- To reduce risk of injury in the event of an accident or emergency braking, keep the glove box closed while driving.

## Bill Box

- Pull the handle on the driver's side glovebox to open it.
- Invoices, business cards, or similar items can be put in the driver's side glovebox. Do not put in large or heavy objects, so as not to close the driver's side glovebox. Please keep the driver's side glovebox closed during driving.



## Center Console Cubby

- Pull up the center console cubby cover as the figure shows.
- Press the center console cubby cover downward to close it.



**REMINDER**

- To reduce risk of injury in the event of an accident or emergency braking, keep the center console cubby closed while driving.

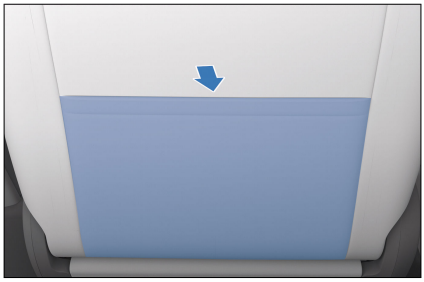
## Glasses Case

- Press the glasses case cover to open it.



## Seatback Pockets

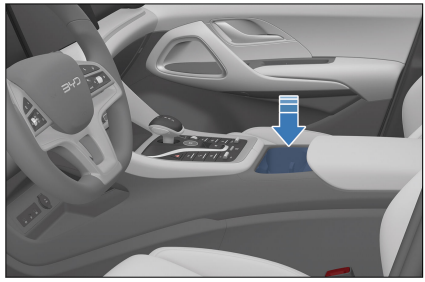
- There are seatback pockets at the back of the front seats for storing magazines, newspapers, or similar objects.



## Cup Holder

**Front Seat Cup Holder**

The front seat cup holder is located in the center console.



**Rear Seat Cup Holder**

Pull down the rear armrest to use the rear seat cup holder located on it.



**CAUTION**

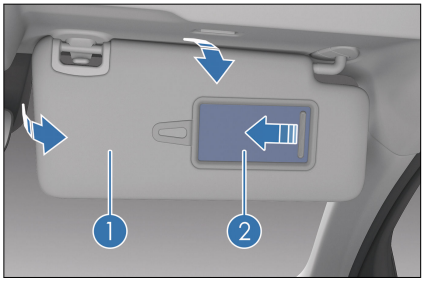
- When using the cup holder, do not start or brake the vehicle suddenly to prevent liquid spillage and burn you or other passengers.
- Do not place an open cup or untightened beverage bottle in the cup holder, so as to avoid liquid spillage when you are opening and closing the doors and driving.
- To ensure safe driving, the driver is strictly prohibited from taking the cup out or placing it in the cup holder while driving.

# Other Devices

## Sun Visor

① Sun Visor

- To block the sunlight from the front, pull the sun visor down.
- To block the light from the side, remove the slewing sleeve from the fixed support and turn sun visors to the side window.




② Vanity Mirror

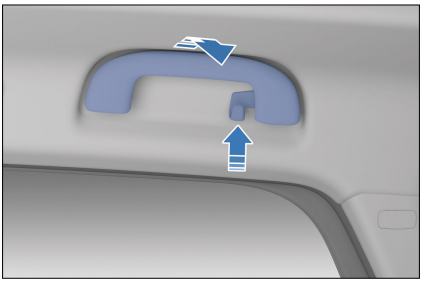
- Vanity mirror is installed on the driver’ s and front passenger’ s sun visors.
- Turn down the sun visor, open the vanity mirror cover to use the cosmetic mirror, and the cosmetic lamp will automatically light up.

**REMINDER**

- Correct use of the sun visor improves driving safety and comfort.

## Grab Handles

- Pull the safety handle down for use. The handle returns to its original position when released.
- Beside the safety handle is the clothes hook to hang clothes and hats.



**CAUTION**

- Do not hang heavy objects on the grab handle or clothes hook, as this may result in damage or personal injury.

## USB Ports

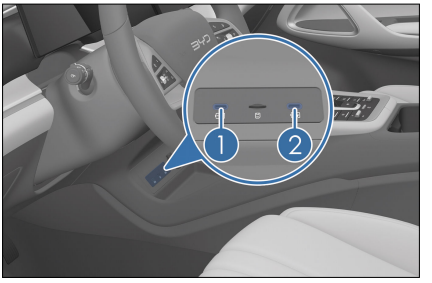
### Front-Row USB Ports

- The lower layer of the secondary dashboard is provided with 2 USB interfaces.

① Type-C port for data transmission.

② Type-C port, rechargeable only.

- It can be used only when the power gear of the vehicle is in the "ON" gear.



**CAUTION**

- It is recommended to use a USB storage device with partition format of FAT32, NTFS and memory of 8 ~ 128G.
- Do not use substandard or special USB storage devices to avoid damaging the multimedia system or data in the USB device.

**Rear Row USB Ports**

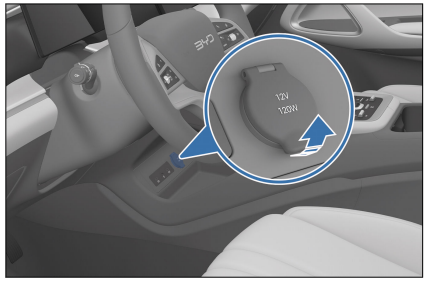
- The rear USB port is located behind the central armrest box.
  - The two USB ports in the back row are Type-C ports, which can only be charged.
  - It can be used only when the power gear of the vehicle is in the "ON" gear.



## 12V Standby Power

**Front row standby power**

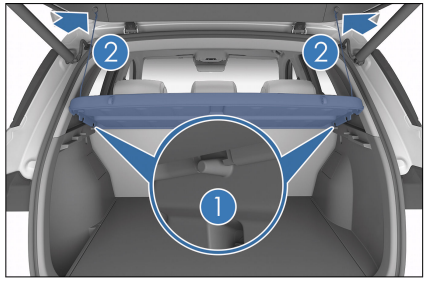
- The front row standby power is located at the lower layer of the secondary dashboard.



- The standby power can be used for accessories with a working current of less than 10 A and electrical power of less than 120W.
- The 12V standby power supplies power to vehicle accessories.
- When the 12V standby power supply is used, its cover must be opened, and the power supply gear of the whole vehicle must be in the "ON" position.

## Rack

- The rack is used for light article storage and privacy and direct sunlight protection.
- Insert one side of the rack into the groove ① of the C-pillar protection board and insert the other side into other groove. Hang the limit ropes ② on the tailgate.



**WARNING**

- When installing the rack, make sure that it is installed securely.
- Do not place hard, heavy, sharp materials or pet on the rack, or that may result in safety threat to occupants when braking in emergency or rapidly accelerating.
- Never allow a child to climb onto the rack, otherwise, damage to the rack, or even injury/death to the child, can happen.

## Wireless Phone Charger*

- The smartphone wireless charging area is located in the center console. The user can slide down the status bar on the top of the infotainment touchscreen to open the Quick interface and turn on or off the smartphone wireless charging function. The system is turned on by default. After the vehicle is started, place the smartphone on the anti-skid rubber pad in the wireless charging area, with the smartphone screen facing upwards, and the smartphone is automatically switched to the wireless charging mode. The charging icon is displayed on the infotainment UI interface.
  - The green icon  in the cellphone flashes dynamically during charging.
  - Charging fault: The icon  flashes.



**CAUTION**

- During wireless charging, ensure that the intelligent key is more than 25cm away from the charging area.
- Do not place coins, metal keys, metal rings, or other items containing metal components on the wireless charging area together with the smartphone, so as to avoid dysfunctions and even safety accidents.
- Do not place heavy objects on the charging area to avoid damage to the charging area.
- If the smartphone wireless charging system fails, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- BYD is not liable for any problems caused by abnormal use. If the product has been disassembled or modified, the warranty service is terminated.
- When leaving the vehicle, do not place the smartphone in the vehicle for charging to avoid potential safety hazards.
- Do not check smartphone charging for a long time during driving to ensure traffic safety.

**CAUTION**

- When charging the smartphone wirelessly, if any metal object between the smartphone and the rubber pad is found, do not remove it immediately by hand to avoid burns.
- For better charging, place the smartphone in the center (where the "Charging Area" is shown).
- Do not spray water on the charging area to prevent water from entering the wireless charger through the gap of the rubber pad, thus avoiding charger failure.
- When the temperature is too high, the charging of the smartphone may stop and continues after the temperature drops.
- BYD is not responsible for the problems caused by the external wireless charging coil. Please use such coil with caution.

**REMINDER**

- The smartphone wireless charging setting icon can be added or deleted in the edit bar on the Quick interface of the Multimedia System.
- The smartphone wireless charging is applicable to QI certified smartphones only.
- Do not place any foreign objects in the charging area during program upgrading.
- Only one smartphone can be charged at a time.
- Too thick smartphone shell may cause charging failure.

**REMINDER**

- When the vehicle runs through bumps, wireless charging may be briefly interrupted.
- If the smartphone deviates from the wireless charging area and stops charging, move the smartphone back to the wireless charging area.
- In the event of smartphone wireless charging failure, make sure that there is no object placed on the wireless charging area or wait for the wireless charging area to cool down before charging again. If the wireless charging still fails, please contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

# 06 MAINTENANCE

Maintenance Information..... 218
Regular Maintenance.....221
Self-Maintenance.....227

# Maintenance Information

## Maintenance Cycle and Items

### Vehicle Maintenance Plan

- The maintenance plan is used to ensure stable driving, reduce the occurrence of faults, and ensure safe and economical driving.
- The maintenance interval table lists all the maintenance items necessary to keep your car in the best running condition at all times. These items are very important and need to be maintained according to the time intervals listed in the table.
- If there is any deterioration or damage to the hose during maintenance, it should be replaced immediately. Rubber hoses (for systems such as cooling, heating, and braking systems) must be checked by professional technicians according to the maintenance schedule.

### Maintenance Schedule Requirements

The vehicle must be maintained according to a maintenance schedule.

If the vehicle is operated mainly under one or more of the following special conditions, some maintenance schedule items need to be carried out more frequently.

- Road conditions
  - Driving on rough, muddy or snowy roads.
  - Driving on dusty roads.
- Driving conditions
  - The vehicle is driven within 8 km repeatedly and driven in an environment with temperature below zero.
  - The vehicle is driven in long-term idling or/and low-speed long-distance driving conditions. The examples include police cars, taxis, or vehicles carrying goods.

### Maintenance Interval

The basic maintenance of the vehicle is carried out in accordance with the following maintenance time and maintenance mileage (total mileage), whichever comes first.

| Maintenance Item | Time and mileage interval for maintenance |
|---|---|
| Check whether the cooling water pipe is intact and tightly locked at the connecting parts | Every 12 months or 15,000 km |
| Check brake pads and discs | Check every 24 months or 30,000 km |
| Check brake system pipeline and hoses | Every 24 months or 30,000 km |
| Check steering wheel and lever | Check every 24 months or 30,000 km |
| Check drive shaft dust cover | Check every 24 months or 30,000 km |

| Maintenance Item | Time and mileage interval for maintenance |
|---|---|
| Check ball pin and dust cover | Check every 24 months or 30,000 km |
| Check front and rear suspension | Check every 24 months or 30,000 km |
| Check the tire wear (if the tire eccentric wear is greater than 2mm, check the front and rear wheel alignment) | Check during maintenance, and carry out tire transposition if necessary; In bad working conditions, increase the frequency of inspection, and carry out tire transposition if necessary |
| Inspect EPS appearance corrosion and foreign matters and ablation of connectors (including wiring harness grounding) | Check every 24 months or 30,000 km |
| Check the coolant level in the expansion tank | Check every 24 months or 30,000 km |
| Check brake fluid | Check every 24 months or 30,000 km |
| Check the high-voltage battery tray, anti-collision bar, guard plate, battery heat shield* and explosion-proof valve* for collision and deformation, and check the power assembly for leakage | Check every 24 months or 30,000 km |
| Check the A/C strainer and filter | Check every 24 months or 30,000 km after the first maintenance. In case of severe environment or reduced air outlet, it is recommended to check in time and replace the air conditioning filter screen if necessary |
| Check exhaust pipe joint for air leakage | Check every 24 months or 30,000 km |
| Check fuel filler cap, fuel pipe and connector | Check every 24 months or 30,000 km |
| Replace engine coolant and drive motor coolant | Replace the long-acting organic acid coolant every 6 years or 90,000 km |
| Replace the brake fluid | Check during maintenance and replace every 2 years or 30,000 km |
| Replace EHS special gear oil | Check the EHS gear oil quantity during maintenance, and replace the oil and filter element assembly every 4 years or 60,000 km |
| Replace the transmission filter element | Replace the filter(press filter) element every 4 years or 60,000 km |
| Replace engine oil and oil filter | Every 12 months or 15,000 km |

| Maintenance Item | Time and mileage interval for maintenance |
|---|---|
| Spark plug | Replace every 45,000 km |
| Fuel filter | Every 24 months or 30,000 km |
| Replace air filter element | Replace every 12 months or 15,000 km thereafter; conduct additional inspection under severe service conditions, and replace if necessary |
| Replace charcoal canister dust filter | Every 2 years or 30,000 km, or upon frequent automatic fuel gun stopping during refueling. |

**REMINDER**

- In order to keep the high-voltage battery in the optimum state, it is necessary to (at least every 6 months or 72,000 km) fully charge and discharge the vehicle on a regular basis to achieve the purpose of battery self-calibration, or contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for capacity test and calibration.
- In following bad working conditions, it is recommended to shorten the recommended maintenance intervals according to the actual situation to protect the vehicle.
  - Drive the vehicle in low-temperature environment (ambient temperature <5°C) for a long time, and the continuous driving time in HEV mode is short (<15min) every time, or it is frequently driven in a slow crawling condition (vehicle speed <10 km/h) for a long time.

**Remarks:**

- The maintenance period in the table is calculated from the purchase date.
- To keep the vehicle in the optimum state, please operate the vehicle correctly according to the following instructions.
  - Before the first maintenance, the use ratio of HEV mode should not be less than 50% during running-in in ECO mode.
  - After the first maintenance, the use ratio of HEV mode should not be less than 10%.
- The replacement time of the oil filter can be shortened according to the degree of fouling the gasoline engine.
- Severe driving conditions include:
  - Frequent driving in dusty areas or frequent exposure to salt-laden air.
  - Frequent driving on bumpy, puddled, or mountain roads.
  - Driving in cold weather.
  - Frequent and sudden braking.
  - Frequent use of a towed trailer.
  - Use as a taxi.
  - Driving in congested urban areas at temperatures above 32°C for more than 50% of total travel time.
  - Driving at speeds over 120 km/h at temperatures above 30°C for more than 50% of total travel time.

- Frequent drive with maximum load.

# Regular Maintenance

## Regular Maintenance

- In order to ensure that the vehicle runs with the best working efficiency and to reduce the occurrence of faults, maintenance must be carried out according to the maintenance schedule.
- For the planned maintenance interval, refer to the maintenance schedule depending on the reading of the odometer or the time interval, whichever comes first.
- Overdue maintenance items should also be implemented at the same intervals.
- It is recommended that maintenance be performed in accordance with the standards and specifications of BYD Auto Co., Ltd., and by a local BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- The maintenance items and driving time or distance listed in the maintenance schedule are based on the assumption that the vehicle is used as regular means of transportation to carry passengers and goods, so avoid exceeding the load limit of the vehicle.

**CAUTION**

- Please maintain the vehicle regularly according to the requirements in the Warranty and Maintenance Service Manual of BYD.

**Vehicle Servicing**

- Pay attention to vehicle performance, sound changes, and visual evidence that indicates service is required. If the following situations occur, it is recommended to send the vehicle to BYD authorized service center for inspection or repair as soon as possible:
  - Motor start produces unusual noises.
  - Coolant remains overheated, is stagnated or leaks.
  - Motor jams and produces unexpected noise.
  - The motor runs with excessive vibration.
  - The motor fails to get started.
  - Electric assembly leaks oil.
  - Electric assembly emits odors.
  - Power declines significantly.
  - Water leaks from under the vehicle (A/C condensate is normal).
  - Tire deflates; tires make excessive noises at turns; tire wear is uneven.
  - Vehicle leads to one side when driving straight on a flat surface.
  - Suspension unit movement leads to unusual noises.
  - Loss of braking effect; sponge feeling on the brake pedal or clutch pedal; pedal almost contacts the floor; vehicle leads to one side when braking.
  - Motor coolant temperature remains high.
  - Battery capacity decreases significantly.

- High battery temperature or overheat protection persists, or there is no power output.
- "Please check the engine system" reminder appears on the instrument.
- There is obvious abnormal vibration or noise in the front compartment.
- The engine leaks oil and water.
- The exhaust emits blue smoke or thick black smoke.
- Air conditioning refrigeration does not blow cold air, or air conditioning heating does not blow hot air.

**WARNING**

- Do not continue driving a vehicle that has not been inspected, as this may result in serious vehicle damage and personal injury.

## Vehicle Corrosion Prevention

**The most common causes of vehicle corrosion:**

- Saline and alkaline substances, dust and moisture are accumulated on the vehicle floor.
- The vehicle is in a high-humidity environment or some parts of the vehicle are in a humid and hightemperature environment for a long time.
- The paint layer or underlayer is scratched by minor collision or by stones and gravel.

**To prevent vehicle corrosion, the following guidelines shall be observed:**

- Wash the vehicle frequently.
  - If you drive on a saline-alkali road in winter or live in a coastal area, clean the chassis and wheel guard with a high-pressure water gun or steam at least once a month to reduce corrosion. After winter, wash the chassis thoroughly
  - After being used near the coastal road, such as driving on the coastal road, on the beach or abnormally entering the sea water or being wet by the sea water. (Note: Parts wetted by sea water need to be thoroughly and deeply cleaned immediately with plenty of fresh water.)
  - Wash the car with clean water and neutral detergent.
- Check body paint and decorative parts.
  - Any chip or crack found on the paint must be repaired immediately to prevent corrosion. If fragments or cracks peel off from the metal surface, it is recommended to go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for repair.
- Check the interior of the compartment.
  - Moisture and dust accumulated under the carpet cause corrosion, so the underneath of the carpet should be regularly checked and kept dry.
  - When transporting such goods as chemicals, detergents, fertilizers, and salts, special care should be taken, and proper containers must be used. In the event of splashing or leakage, clean the vehicle immediately and keep it dry.
- Use mudguards.
  - If the vehicle is running in a salinealkali area or on a gravel road, mudguards can protect the vehicle. The bigger and closer to the ground the mudguards, the better.
- Park in a well-ventilated and dry area.

- Keep the drain hole of the door unblocked to avoid water accumulation.

## Paint Maintenance Tips

- Clean the vehicle in time.
- To prevent color incongruity or rough surfaces, avoid secondary paint spraying if the top coat has no obvious scratches.
- If the vehicle is parked for a long time, it should be parked in a garage or well-ventilated place, and covered with a special body cover in winter. Choose a cool place for temporary parking.
- Prevent strong impact, bumps, or scratches on paint film of the vehicle body. If any scratch, dent, or peeling is found on the top coat, repair it in time, preferably at a professional auto detailing shop.
- Do not touch the top coat with greasy hands or scrub it with a greasy cloth. Do not place tools or cloth contaminated by organic solvents on the vehicle body to avoid chemical reactions.
- Wax the vehicle top coat for protection once a month or when the body surface cannot resist water well, and go to a professional auto detailing shop for maintenance regularly (quarterly) to restore the brightness and luster of the body top coat in time.
- Use high-quality polishing agent and wax. If the polished surface of the vehicle body has been severely weathered, use a wax-free vehicle cleaning and polishing agent. Carefully follow the manufacturer's instructions and preventive measures. The chrome-plated surface shall be polished and waxed as the paint surface.

**CAUTION**

- When the vehicle is repainted and placed in a high-temperature paint waxing workshop, the vehicle’ s plastic bumper must be removed to avoid damage caused by high temperatures.

## Exterior Cleaning

- The vehicle must be cleaned in time under the following circumstances which will cause peeling of paint layer or corrosion of body and parts:
  - Driving along the coast.
  - Driving on a road on which anti-freeze has been scattered.
  - Driving on roads covered with coal tar.
  - Resin, bird droppings and insect carcasses get stuck.
  - Driving in areas with a large amount of smoke, soot, dust, iron filings or chemicals.
  - Vehicles visibly soiled by dust or mud.
  - After raining.

**CAUTION**

- Before washing the vehicle, please make sure that the tailgate, hood, and all doors are closed.
- When cleaning the vehicle, do not open the charging port flap and the oil filler flap to clean inside.
- Do not wash the vehicle in hot and direct sunlight.

**Manual Vehicle Washing**

Wait for the vehicle to cool down sufficiently in the shade before washing it.

1. Use a water pipe to wash off loose dirt and all mud or saline-alkali substances at the bottom of the vehicle and sunken parts of wheels.
2. Clean the vehicle with a neutral washing agent mixed according to the manufacturer' s instructions. Soak a soft cloth with cleaning solution and gently wipe it down along the direction of the water flow. Do not wipe in a circular motion or horizontally.
3. Rinse well: It forms markings when the washing agent dries. After washing the vehicle in hot weather, rinse the parts properly.
4. In order to prevent water stains, wipe the vehicle body dry with a clean soft towel, and avoid wiping or pressing hard, otherwise the paint surface may be scratched.

**Vehicle washing with high-pressure cleaning equipment**

- If the vehicle is washed with high-pressure washing equipment, the following operating instructions are to be observed:
  - The distance between the nozzle of the high-pressure water gun and the cleaning surface of the vehicle body shall be greater than 30cm.
  - The recommended pressure of the high pressure water gun is within 60 bar, and the maximum is not more than 100 bar.
  - The water spray mode of the water gun shall be fan-shaped or mist spray mode (do not use high-pressure water column to spray directly).
  - When cleaning, the nozzle should be moved continuously, and do not stop at a fixed point to wash.

**CAUTION**

- Please be sure to follow the above instructions when washing the vehicle, otherwise the vehicle and parts may be damaged or damaged.
- Avoid directly washing the sealing strip with a high-pressure water gun, which not only easily deforms or even damages the sealing strip under the pressure of the high-pressure water gun, but also easily causes water to enter the vehicle.

**REMINDER**

- Do not use strongly alkaline washing powder, soapy water, detergents, de-waxing detergents, or organic matters (gasoline, kerosene, volatile oil, or strong solvent) to clean the vehicle.
- When cleaning the lamp, do not use alcohol (such as alcohol, glass water), ketone (such as banana water, insect cleaner) or other chemical solvents (such as gasoline, thinner, carbon tetrachloride) to wipe the surface of the lamp, otherwise the lamp mask will crack.
- It is recommended that vehicles traveling in coastal or heavily polluted areas be washed once a day.
- Do not use blades or gasoline to remove hard dirt from the vehicle body. The plastic wheel trim is easily damaged by organic matter. If any organic matter splashes on

**REMINDER**

the vehicle trim, remove it with water and check whether the trim is damaged. Please replace any seriously damaged plastic wheel trim in time. Otherwise, the trim may fall from the wheel during vehicle movement and cause an accident.

- Do not use cleaning agents containing abrasives to clean bumpers or lamps.
- Clean polished metal parts with carbon cleaner and wax them regularly for protection.
- When cleaning under the floor or chassis, pay attention to safety and avoid cutting hands.

**Automatic Vehicle Washing**

Some types of brushes, unfiltered water, or machine-defined rinse procedures in automatic car wash stations may scratch or damage the paint surface. The scratches reduce the durability and glossiness of the paint surface, especially for dark-colored vehicles. Before washing the car, it is better to consult the staff at the car wash station or consult the instructions on the automatic car wash machine to find out which car wash procedure is the safest for the paint surface of the vehicle.

**CAUTION**

- Before using the automatic car wash equipment, please confirm that the automatic parking function is turned off.
- Before washing the vehicle, fold the side mirrors inward. And

**CAUTION**

unfold the side mirror before driving.

## Interior Cleaning

**REMINDER**

- When cleaning the interior or exterior of the vehicle, do not allow water to flow onto the floor and dashboard, as water entering nearby electrical components may cause malfunction.

**Carpet**

- Clean carpets with a high-quality foam detergent.
- Firstly, use a vacuum cleaner to clean the dust as much as possible. There are several types of foam detergents that can be used. Some are filled in spray cans, and others are in powder or liquid forms, producing foam by mixing with water. Clean carpets with foam-soaked sponges or brushes and scrub them in circular motions.
- Do not use plain water only, and keep the carpets as dry as possible.

**Seat Belts**

- The seat belts can be cleaned with neutral soapy water or lukewarm water.
- Wipe seat belts with sponge or soft cloth. Check the seat belts for excessive wear, tears or cut marks.

**CAUTION**

- Do not clean the seat belt with colorant or bleach. These substances may decrease the seat belt' s strength.
- Do not use any seat belt that is not dry.

**Doors and Windows**

- Doors and windows can be cleaned with common household detergents.
- Check the door brake regularly. If obvious dust accumulation is found on the brake rod, wipe it with a wet soft cloth to remove dust on the surface, and then apply 0.3~0.8 g grease between the bracket and the rod riveted shaft, and between the rod and the sliding block.
- Gently wipe the inner side of the rear windshield along the left and right directions. Excessive force or wiping up and down may damage the heating wires of the rear defroster and antenna conductor.

**CAUTION**

- When cleaning the inside of the rear windows, take care not to scratch or damage electric heating wires or junctions.

**A/C Control Panel, Car Audio, Dashboard, Control Panel and Switches**

- Clean the A/C control panel, car speakers, dashboard, control panel and switches with a wet soft cloth.
- Wipe dust off gently with a clean soft cloth soaked in lukewarm water.

**CAUTION**

- Do not use any organic matter (such as solvents, kerosene, alcohol, gasoline) or acid-base solutions. These chemicals can cause discoloration, staining, or flaking.
- Please confirm that the detergent or polishing agent to be used does not contain the above substances.
- If a new-type liquid car washer is used, do not splash it onto the interior surface of the vehicle, because it may contain the above substances. Clear any splashed liquid quickly.

**Interior Leather Trimmings**

- Leather trimmings can be cleaned with a neutral detergent for woolen.
- Use a soft cloth soaked with a neutral detergent solution to wipe off the dust, and then use a clean wet cloth to wipe off the residual detergent thoroughly.
- If leather gets wet, wipe it with a clean soft cloth. Dry the leather in a well-ventilated, cool place.
- For any questions about vehicle cleaning, please consult a local BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

**CAUTION**

- If dirt cannot be cleaned off using a neutral detergent, clean it with a detergent that does not contain organic solvents.
- Do not clean leather with any organic material such as volatile oil, alcohol, gasoline, acid or alkali. as these will cause discoloration.

**CAUTION**

- Do not clean leather with a nylon brush or synthetic fiber cloth, as these may scratch the fine patterns on the leather surface.
- Mold may grow on dirty leather trimmings. Special care must be taken to avoid oil stains and atrimmings must always be kept clean.
- Prolonged exposure to sunlight will cause leather to harden or shrink. So the vehicle should be parked in a shady and cool place, especially in the summer.
- In hot weather, avoid placing vinyl or waxy items on the trimmings, as these may stick to leather in high temperatures.
- Improper cleaning of leather trimmings may cause discoloration or spots.

# Self-Maintenance

## Self-Maintenance

### Self-Maintenance Precautions

- If you want to carry out maintenance by yourself, make sure to correctly follow the steps specified in this chapter.
- It should be noted that incorrect and incomplete maintenance will affect the driving experience.
- This chapter only lists the instructions for some simple maintenance operations that the user can carry out. However, there are still many items that must be completed by qualified technicians with special tools.
- Special care must be taken during vehicle maintenance to prevent accidental injury. The following precautions must be observed.

**CAUTION**

- Beware of short circuits, as some circuits and vehicle components carry high current or voltage.
- If coolant overflows, wipe it with a dry cloth or tissue to prevent damage to components or vehicle paint and add coolant in time.
- Only specialized spark plug can be used. The use of other spark plug may result in engine performance loss or damage, or radio interference to other electric products.
- Do not reuse the spark plug by cleaning or adjusting the spark plug gap.
- If brake fluid overflows, rinse it with water to prevent damage to components or vehicle paint.
- Do not drive the vehicle with the air filter removed; otherwise, the engine is excessively worn.
- When replacing wiper blades, do not allow the wipers to scratch the glass surface.
- Before closing the engine cover, check whether any tool or wipe cloth is left in the engine compartment.
- When the engine is running, keep hands, clothes and tools at a certain distance from the rotating fan. It is recommanded that take off the watch, ring, or tie.
- The engine, radiator, exhaust manifold and spark plug cover are hot after driving. Do not touch

**CAUTION**

them and be careful to operate. The engine oil and other fluid may be hot too.

- If the engine is very hot, do not remove or loosen the expansion tank cover to prevent burns.
- Do not smoke in or near the vehicle to avoid sparks or open flames that may cause fire.
- Ensure the vehicle is flameout when working around the electric fan or radiator grill. If the engine coolant is hot or the A/C System is on with the vehicle powered on, the electric fan may automatically start.
- When working inside or under the vehicle, always wear goggles to protect your eyes against flying or falling objects or splashing liquid.
- As brake fluid may damage the skin or eyes, be careful when filling it. If your skin or eyes are exposed to brake fluid, immediately flush with clean water. Seek medical attention immediately if discomfort persists.

**Self-check**

The following items should be checked according to service conditions or specified mileage:

- Coolant level: check the radiator and expansion tank at least once a month.
- Windshield washer fluid: check the amount of washer fluid in the fluid reservoir once a month. If the washer fluid is frequently used due to bad weather, increase the frequency of checking.
- Windshield wipers: check the wiper condition once a month. If the wiper cannot clean the windshield completely, check if any damage such as wear and cracking exists.
- Brake fluid level: check the fluid level at least once a month.
- Brake pedal: check whether the brake pedal operates freely and check whether the brake light switch limit pad is aged and damaged.
- EPB switch: check whether the switch functions well.
- Low-voltage battery: check battery conditions and check for terminal corrosion monthly.
- A/C system: check the operation of the A/C unit weekly.
- Tires: check tire pressure monthly. Check the condition of wear and any embedded objects on the tire surface.
- Windshield defrosters: check the defroster vent monthly.
- Lights: check the condition of headlights, position lights, tail lights, high mount brake light, turn signals, rear fog lights, brake lights and license plate light monthly.
- Doors: check whether the tailgate and doors (including rear door) can be opened and closed normally and locked firmly.
- Horn: check whether the horn functions normally.

**CAUTION**

- Do not continue driving a vehicle that has not been inspected, as this may result in serious vehicle damage and personal injury.

### Lights

#### Headlight Alignment

- Headlights of new vehicles are aligned before their delivery. If the vehicle often carries a large load, headlights may need to be re-aligned. It is recommended that headlights be aligned by a BYD-authorized dealer or service provider.

#### Fogging of Lights

- After heavy rain or cleaning, fog may appear on the covers of combination lights, tail lights, or turn signals in side mirrors. This is similar to the condensation phenomenon of the windows on one side of the vehicle during rain, which does not indicate that your vehicle is faulty.
- The lights are a relatively enclosed and narrow space. The temperature is very high when they light up (the mask and reflector could be burned and deformed easily), so they need heat dissipation. Light covers are designed with holes for heat dissipation through convection with the surrounding environment. The larger the temperature difference, the more active the convection. In the process of convection, the water vapor in the air is inevitably brought inside the water vapor in the air is inevitably brought inside lights. Due to the influence of sun exposure, convection, bulb heating, and other factors, the water vapor in the air is easy to condense into fog or water droplets on light surfaces with low temperatures. That is why the fog on light covers forms.

**WARNING**

- The headlight bulbs will become very hot when illuminated. Grease, sweat, or scratches on the glass surface of the bulb can cause the bulb to overheat and break.

**REMINDER**

- If fog presents inside the headlight and inside the turn signal on the side mirror, it may be due to high air humidity or significant temperature difference between the vehicle and its surroundings. In that case, turn on the headlight or turn signal while driving. The fog will evaporate after a short period of driving.
- If there is a noticeable amount of water inside the lights, it is recommended to drive the vehicle to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for maintenance.

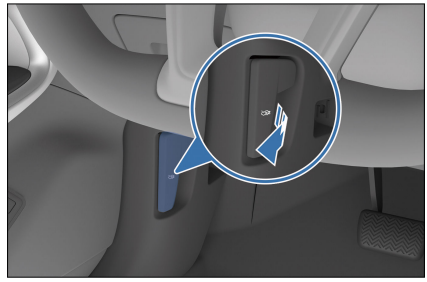
## Vehicle Storage

- If the vehicle needs to be parked for a long time (more than a month), the following preparations should be made. Proper preparation helps to prevent deterioration of vehicle conditions and makes it easy for the next use of the vehicle. If possible, park the vehicle indoors.
- Clean and dry the vehicle body thoroughly.
- Clean the interior of the vehicle to ensure that the carpet and other trimmings are completely dry.
- Shift the gear to P gear.
- If the vehicle needs to be stored for a long time, use a jack to support the body so that the tires are off the ground.

- If the vehicle needs to be stored for a long time, the battery can be turned on continuously when the vehicle is in normal condition. However, it is necessary to fully charge the battery before storage to avoid frequent wake-up of the vehicle. Otherwise, the accumulated deviation of the battery SOC may be too large, which may affect the start of the vehicle.
- Pad the front wiper arm with a folded towel or cloth so as not to contact the windshield.
- To reduce sticking, spray silicone lubricant on the sealing parts of all doors and the tailgate, and apply vehicle body wax on the paint surface where the sealing strips of doors and tailgate contact.
- Cover the vehicle body with a breathable covering made of porous material such as cotton cloth. Non-porous materials such as plastic cloth accumulate moisture and damage the body surface paint.
- If possible, start the vehicle regularly (preferably once every month). If the vehicle has been parked for a year or more, go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for comprehensive maintenance.

## Hood

1. Continuously pull up the hood opening handle on the left side below the dashboard twice, and the hood will be opened slightly after unlocking.



2. To open the hood:
   - Raise the hood to an appropriate height; then it will automatically rise to the open state.



3. To close the hood:
   - Pull down the hood, and quickly press it at a proper height from the cover to close it.



4. After closing the hood, check whether the latch is securely locked.

**REMINDER**

- Ensure that the hood is closed and locked firmly before driving. Otherwise, the hood may suddenly open during driving, resulting in an accident.
- When locking the hood, do not lower the hood with force, and do not allow the hood to fall freely when it is in a wide opening position.
- If the hood is not completely closed after free fall, do not press the front compartment cover with force. The hood shall be unlocked and closed again.

## Engine Maintenance

### Engine Maintenance Information

- If the engine do not be started for a long time, the canister may be in saturation. The canister desorption should be regularly completed to avoid the risk of fuel leakage.
- If the vehicle runs in EV mode for a long time, the engine may be automatically started by itself till the load of canister turns to be normal.

### Engine Cylinder Cleaning

- When the engine injects oil but fails to ignite repeatedly or oil combusts uncompletely, the accumulated oil in cylinder may result in flooding. The cylinder cleaning function is designed for clearing gas mixture and fuel oil in cylinder, which can be activated by driver' s operation:

1. When the OK indicator stays on, the vehicle is in EV-ECO mode, and the engine is at a standstill, then manually switch to the N gear.
2. Manually and continuously pull up the EPB switch, press the brake and accelerator pedals to the deepest positions at the same time, and wait for several seconds to activate the cylinder cleaning function.

### Engine Oil

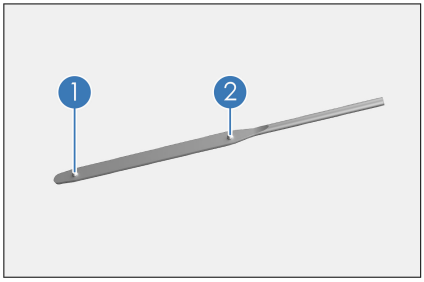
- Be sure to use engine oil with right specifications.
- When purchasing engine oil, check the oil specifications marked on the packaging container, which must conform to the using regulations for this vehicle.

### Recommended engine oil

- Engine oil plays an important role in ensuring the performance and service life of the engine, so high-quality purified engine oil should be used. It is recommended that you choose BYD original engine oil.
- Engine oil consumption is related to driving habits, weather conditions, and road conditions. The engine oil consumption rate of new engines may be higher.

### Check engine oil

1. Park the vehicle on a level road, start the engine till it reaches the normal working temperature, and then shut down the engine.
2. After shutdown for 10min, remove the cover plate on the right side, pull out the oil dipstick, observe the oil level and oil condition, and check whether the oil level is between ① and ②. Add or replace oil as required.




3. Insert the oil dipstick back.

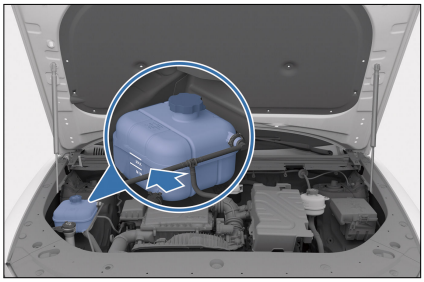
- When the low oil pressure warning light illuminates, please add oil in time.

**WARNING**

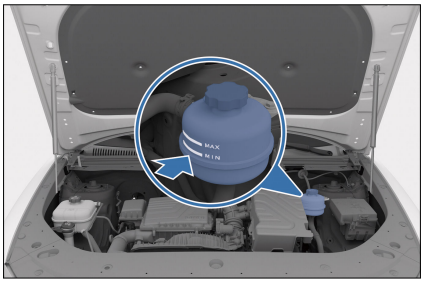
- Be careful not to splash oil on other vehicle components.
- The engine oil, engine components, and exhaust system are all with high temperatures, which may cause burns. Be careful and wear protective clothing when working in the front compartment.
- Long-time or frequent contact with used engine oil causes skin diseases. Use soapy water and clean water to wash the oil on the skin.

## Cooling System

Engine Coolant Expansion Tank



Motor Controller Coolant Expansion Tank




- The fluid level meets the requirement when it is between the MAX (maximum fluid level) and MIN (minimum fluid level) marks of the expansion tank.
- Always use the coolant with specifications same as the original manufacturer's product. No admixture is required. Different brands and types of refrigerant should not be mixed.

**CAUTION**

- Never add any rust inhibitor or other additives to the cooling system. The additives may be incompatible with coolant or motor components.
- Before opening the coolant reservoir cover, make sure that the engine, motor, HV electronic control integrated module, coolant reservoir cover and radiator have cooled down. Otherwise, the coolant may eject and cause serious burns.
- Do not open the upper cover of the front compartment fuse box when filling the coolant.
- Fill the coolant with a special tool to prevent the coolant from flowing into the fuse box.

**REMINDER**

- Go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for coolant addition.

**Radiator and condenser**

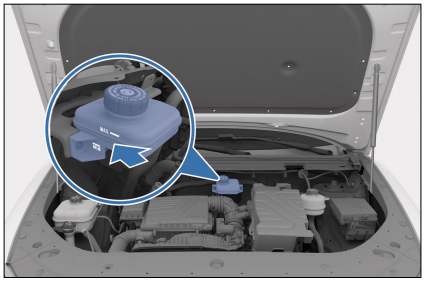
If radiator and condenser are dirty or in uncertain conditions, it is recommended to bring the vehicle to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

**REMINDER**

- Do not touch the radiator or condenser when the engine is hot to prevent scald.
- Do not operate by yourself, or the radiator and condenser may be damaged.

## Braking System

The fluid level should be between MIN and MAX marks on the reservoir wall. If the fluid level is at or below the MIN (lower limit) mark, the braking system should be checked. Check the brake system for leakage, and check the brake pad for wear.

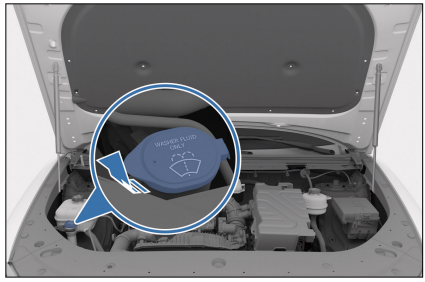


**REMINDER**

- Check the fluid level in the reservoir at least once a month.
- Replace the brake fluid according to the driving time and mileage specified in the regular maintenance schedule.
- Please use HZY6/DOT4 brake fluid of the same model as that of BYD. Other models of brake fluid are not applicable to the braking system of this vehicle.

## Washer

- During normal use, check the fluid level of the windshield washer reservoir at least once a month.
- In bad weather, if the washer is often used, check the washer fluid reservoir level more frequently.
- High quality windshield washer fluid should be added to improve stain removal and prevent freezing in cold weather.



- When you add washer fluid to the fluid reservoir again, use a piece of clean cloth dipped with windshield washer fluid to clean the windshield wiper blade, which helps keep the blade edge in good condition.

**CAUTION**

- Do not inject vinegar-water solution into the windshield washer fluid reservoir.
- It is recommended to use certified windshield washing fluid.

## A/C System

The A/C system is a closed system, and any important maintenance work should be carried out by professionals from a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

The following can be done to ensure effective operation of the A/C system.

- Check the radiator and A/C condenser regularly. Remove leaves, insects and dust accumulated on the front surface. These deposits hinder the airflow and reduce the cooling effect. Contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for handling.
- In cold months, it is recommended that the A/C is turned on once a week for at least 10min to circulate the lubricating oil in the refrigerant unit.
- If A/C efficiency decreases, go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for maintenance.

**CAUTION**

- Whenever the A/C system is maintained, the maintenance station should use a refrigerant recycling system.
- The system can recycle refrigerant to avoid environmental pollution caused by directly discharging refrigerant.

## Wiper Maintenance

The rubber strip of the wiper blade is made of synthetic rubber, which is a vulnerable part. The wiper blade may be damaged in the service environment of various vehicles and by the driver's use habits. Therefore, in order to ensure the service life of the wiper blade and the driving safety of the vehicle, pay attention to the following precautions:

- Remove the ice on the windshield surface with a special ice scraper, rather than with the wiper blades.
- Do not wipe on dirty, oily or waxy windshield surfaces.
- Keep the windshield surface clean. Do not wipe dust, sand, insects, and other objects on the windshield surface.
- Do not wax the windshield when washing the vehicle and maintaining the body paint, as the wax layer reflects light in poor light, consequently affecting the sight and driving safety. After washing the car, the wiper blade should be rinsed with pure water, and the wax layer on the windshield glass should be removed with a special glass wax layer cleaner.
- Do not wash the wiper blade directly with a water gun to prevent damage to the wiper blade due to excessive water pressure.

**Maintenance Rules**

- Clean the windshield and wiper blades regularly (once every one or two weeks).
- Even if there is no rain, it is recommended to wipe regularly (once every day or once every two days).
- When using a blade to wipe the windshield, keep the windshield fully

wet. (When there is no rain, the washer liquid must be sprayed in advance).

- Clean the windshield with special cleaning agent.
- Wipe the windshield with a rag in time if it is attached with soil and dead insects.
- Maintain the windshield in time in case of scratches by gravel knocking (it is recommended to use resin products for the windshield repair, and replace the windshield in case of many or excessive scratches).
- Replace the wiper blade regularly, and an interval of six months is recommended.
- Lift the wiper arms up prior to cleaning the windshield. The specific operation method is as follows:

  1. Enter the multimedia vehicle maintenance information interface, open the front wiper maintenance, and the wiper rotates out.
  2. Grasp the upper end of the wiper arm and carefully lift the wiper arm and wiper blade assembly.

## Tire

- In order to drive safely, tire type and size must be suitable for the vehicle. The tire tread should be in good condition and the tire pressure should be within the standard range.

**WARNING**

- Using tires with excessive wear or insufficient/excessive pressure can result in accidents, severe injury, or death.

**WARNING**

- Please follow all instructions in this manual regarding tire inflation and maintenance.

**Tire Inflation**

- Keeping tires properly inflated provides the best combination of maneuverability, tread-wear life, and driving comfort.
- Driving with underinflated tires leads to uneven tire wear, affect maneuverability and energy consumption, and even may cause air leakage due to overheating.
- Driving with overinflated tires reduces the comfort of the vehicle, and is also more likely to be damaged due to uneven road surfaces. In severe cases, there is a risk of tire burst, which seriously threatens the safety of the vehicle. At the same time, it also leads to uneven wear of tires, thus affecting the service life of tires.
- In a cold state (the vehicle is equipped with a tire pressure monitoring device), whether to inflate the tires depends on the tire pressure values displayed on the instrument cluster.
- Measure the tire pressures when the tires are cold. This means the measurement should be carried out at least three hours after stopping the vehicle. If you have to drive before measuring the tire pressures, as long as the driving distance does not exceed 1.6 km, the tires can still be considered to be in a cold state.
- It is normal that tire pressure reading measured while tires are hot (after travel of several kilometers) is 30-40 kPa (0.3~0.4 bar) higher than when tires are cold. In that case, do not deflate tires in order to achieve the

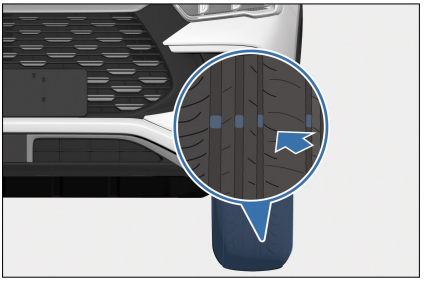
specified cold tire pressure reading; otherwise, the tire pressure will be insufficient.

**REMINDER**

- Recommended Tire Pressure (located on the driver's side door frame) The label plate indicates the recommended cold tire pressure.
- Tubeless tires are self-sealing when punctured, but because air leakage is usually very slow, as soon as the tire begins to depressurize, the location of the leakage should be carefully identified.

**Tire Inspection**

- Whenever checking tire inflation, check tires for damage, foreign body piercing and wear.
  - Replace the tire if bumps, or tread or side damage are found. Tires should be replaced if any of the case happens.
  - Replace the tire if there are cracks on its side, or if its fabric or cord can be seen.
  - Replace tires with excessive tread wear.
- Tire treads are cast with wear bars. When the tread is even with the wear bar, its thickness is less than 1.6 mm. The adhesion of tires worn to this extent is very small on wet roads.



- Replace the tire if the tread is worn to the extent that the wear mark is exposed, in which case the tire performance is greatly lost.

**Maintenance**

- In addition to proper inflation, correct wheel alignment can also help reduce tread wear.
- If uneven tire wear is found, drive the vehicle to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider to check wheel alignment.
- The tires of a vehicle has been balanced in the factory, but tires need to be re-balanced after driving for a period of time.
- If there is some kind of continuous vibration while driving at high speeds (above 80 km/h), but not at low speeds, go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider and check the tires.
- Be sure to balance the tire again after it is repaired.
- When installing a new tire or replacing a new wheel, always perform tire balancing.

**CAUTION**

- Improper wheel balancers will get stuck, become loose and fall off. While driving, this will damage the car or surrounding objects.

**CAUTION**

- Improper wheel balancers will damage the aluminum rims of the vehicle. Therefore, it is recommended to use original wheel balancers.

### Tire Rotation

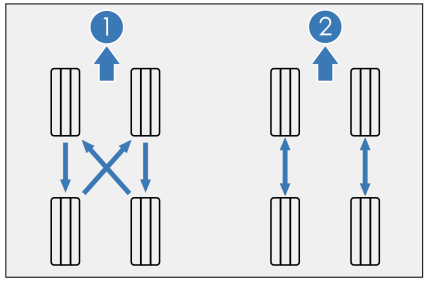
- In order to make tire wear the same and prolong the service life of tires, it is recommended to check the wear on the inside and outside of the tire every 10,000 km and perform tire rotation regularly, conduct four-wheel alignment, inspection and adjustment as well.
- Do not rotate tires when a spare tire* is used for the vehicle.
- After tire replacement, go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for tire pressure matching.

### Directional Tire

- When purchasing and replacing tires, the user may find that some tires are "directional", indicating those tires can be rotated in only one direction. If directional tires are used, only the front and rear wheels can be swapped in tire rotation.
- Tire transposition is as shown in the figure:

① Non-directional tire and wheel

② Directional tire and wheel




### Replacing Tires and Wheels

- The original tires of this vehicle are selected to maximize the performance of the vehicle, and can provide you with the best combination of maneuverability, riding comfort, and service life.
- It is recommended to drive the vehicle to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for new original tires.
- If radial tires with different dimensions, load range, rated speed and maximum cold tire pressure (marked on the side of the tire) from that of the original tires are used for replacement, or radial tires and diagonal tires are used at the same time, the braking capacity, driving force (ground adhesion) and steering accuracy of the vehicle are reduced.
- Installing improper tires affect the operational sensitivity and stability of the vehicle, and may cause accidents and casualties.
- Do not replace only one tire; otherwise it will severely affect the maneuverability of the vehicle.
- ABS works by comparing wheel speed. When replacing a tire, use a tire of the same size as the original tire. The size and structure of the tire can affect wheel speed and may lead to uncoordinated system operation.

- If the wheels need to be replaced, make sure that the specifications of the new wheels are consistent with those of the original ones. New wheels can be purchased from a BYD authorized dealer or service provider. Before replacing wheels, consult a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

**WARNING**

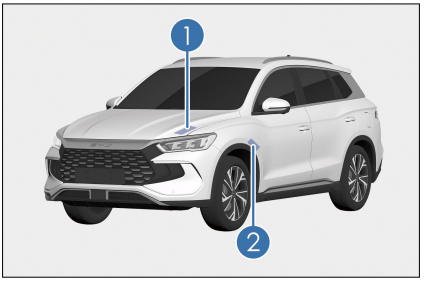
- Please observe the following precautions to ensure proper vehicle performance and control.
  - Do not mix radial tires, bias belted tires, or diagonal ply tires on the vehicle.
  - Do not use tires with dimensions other than those recommended by the manufacturer.

## Fuses

All circuits on the vehicle are equipped with fuses to prevent short circuits or overloads. Fuse stickers are attached to the front cabin distribution box and dashboard distribution box. Fuse stickers are attached to the front cabin distribution box and dashboard distribution box. The labeling makes it possible to determine the correspondence between fuses and electrical components.

① Front compartment fuse box

② Dashboard PDB




- The front compartment distribution box is located beside the left fender of front compartment. The Under-Hood PDB is located on the left side of the front compartment. Open the hood and its plate, find the front compartment power distribution box, and press the latch on the upper cover to open it.
- The instrument panel power distribution box is located inside the left side of the lower fender shield of the driver's dashboard. Remove the left end fender shield of the instrument panel first, and then remove the lower fender shield of the instrument panel, so as to repair the fuse of instrument panel.
- Replacement of blown fuses with ones of higher amperage can significantly increase the likelihood of damage to the electrical system.
- If you do not have a substitution fuse with an amperage matching the circuit, you should replace it with a fuse with a lower amperage.

**REMINDER**

- Do not use any fuse with an amperage higher than the rated value, or any other object to replace fuses. Doing so can result in serious damage and potentially cause a fire.

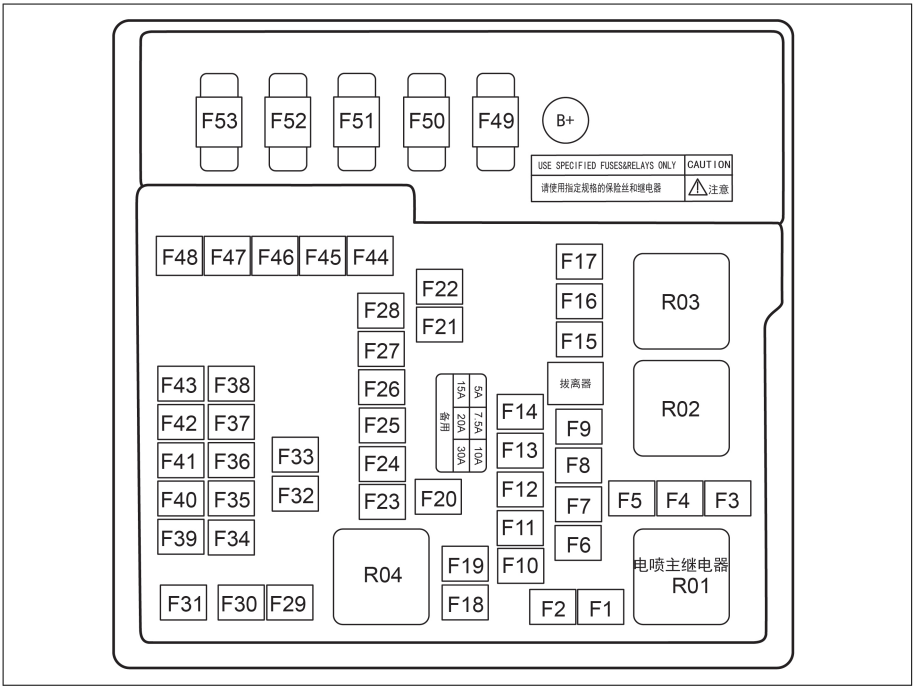
**REMINDER**

- After the fuse is blown, it is recommended to check or replace

**REMINDER**

it at a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

**Under-Hood Fuse Box Nameplate**

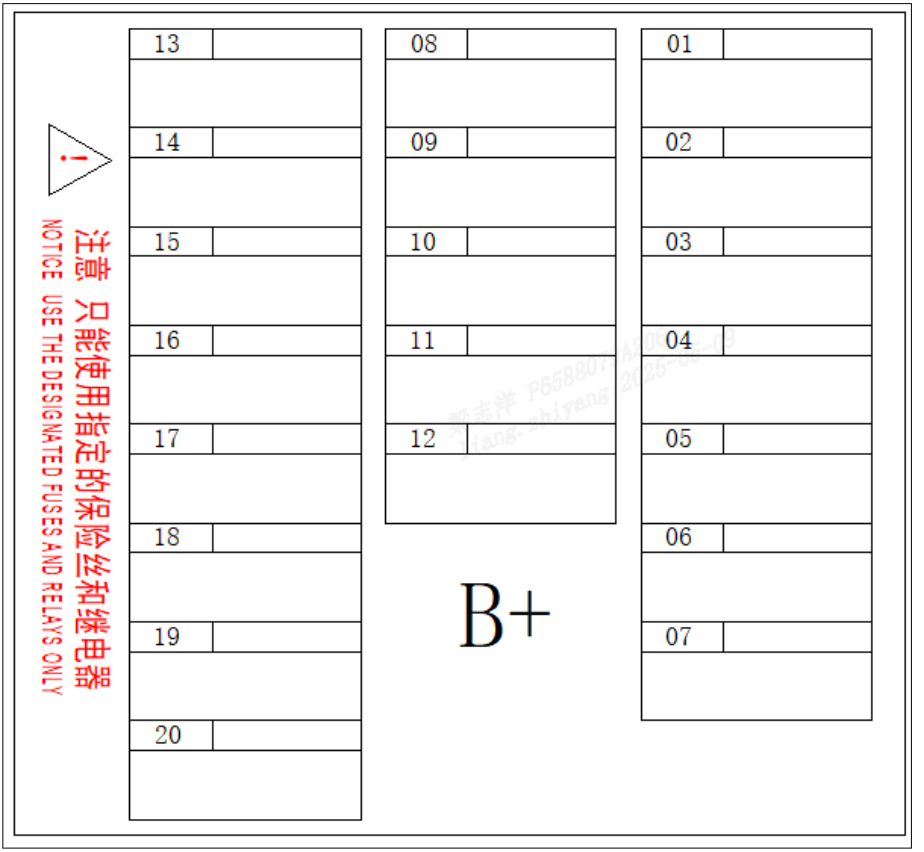



| No. | Ampere (A) | Protected Component or Circuit |
|---|---|---|
| F1 | 40 | Electronic fuel injection system |
| F2 | - | - |
| F3 | 10 | Fuel injector |
| F4 | 30 | Engine ECU |
| F5 | 20 | Ignition coil |
| F6 | 15 | Solenoid valve |
| F7 | 10 | Oxygen sensor |

| No. | Ampere (A) | Protected Component or Circuit |
|---|---|---|
| F8 | - | - |
| F9 | 5 | Engine ECU |
| F10 | 15 | Greeting lights |
| F11 | - | - |
| F12 | 7.5 | Compressor |
| F13 | 10 | Motor controller |
| F14 | - | - |
| F15 | 5 | AGS |
| F16 | - | - |
| F17 | - | - |
| F18 | 20 | Trailer hitch |
| F19 | - | - |
| F20 | 30 | Rear windshield defroster |
| F21 | 30 | Front wiper |
| F22 | - | - |
| F23 | 10 | Vehicle control unit |
| F24 | 10/7.5 | Electrically controlled coolant pump |
| F25 | 10 | BMS |
| F26 | 10 | USB |
| F27 | 15 | Standby power |
| F28 | - | - |
| F29 | - | - |
| F30 | 60 | ESC |
| F31 | -/25 | -/Electrically controlled coolant pump |
| F32 | - | - |
| F33 | 5 | BMS |

| No. | Ampere (A) | Protected Component or Circuit |
|---|---|---|
| F34 | - | - |
| F35 | 5 | Rear body controller |
| F36 | 7.5 | Engine ECU |
| F37 | 7.5 | ETC |
| F38 | 10 | SRS |
| F39 | 5 | ADAS |
| F40 | - | - |
| F41 | 5 | EPS |
| F42 | 5 | ESC |
| F43 | - | - |
| F44 | 60 | ESC |
| F45 | 40/- | Blower/- |
| F46 | - | - |
| F47 | 15 | Rear USB |
| F48 | 10 | Rear wiper |
| F49 | - | - |
| F50 | 70 | C-EPS |
| F51 | 60 | Stepless fan |
| F52 | - | - |
| F53 | 60/60 | Engine water pump/blower |

**Dashboard PDB nameplate**




| No. | Ampere (A) | Protected Component or Circuit |
|---|---|---|
| 01 | 5 | On-board charger |
| 02 | 5 | Instrument cluster |
| 03 | 5 | High-frequency receiving module |
| 04 | 5 | Vehicle control unit |
| 05 | - | - |
| 06 | - | - |
| 07 | 30 | Rear body controller |

| No. | Ampere (A) | Protected Component or Circuit |
|---|---|---|
| 08 | - | - |
| 09 | 30 | Rear body controller |
| 10 | 30 | Rear body controller |
| 11 | 30 | Left front electric seat |
| 12 | 30 | Right front electric seat |
| 13 | 20 | Multimedia system |
| 14 | 5 | ADAS |
| 15 | - | - |
| 16 | 5 | Gearshift panel |
| 17 | 10 | Alcohol interlock |
| 18 | 5 | Brake light switch |
| 19 | 10 | Diagnostic port |
| 20 | 7.5 | Combination switch |

# 07 WHEN FAULTS OCCUR

When Faults Occur.....246

# When Faults Occur

## Reflective Vest

The reflective vest is placed in the vehicle tool bag. In case of emergency, always wear the reflective vest properly before you check for faults or handle accidents to ensure your safety.

## If Smart Key Battery Is Exhausted

If the electronic intelligent key indicator does not flash, and the vehicle cannot be started with the start function, the battery may be exhausted. Contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for battery replacement as soon as possible. In this case, the vehicle can be started in the power-off mode.

**CAUTION**

- Do not place the smart key in a position exposed to high temperature.
- Do not hit or slam the key with hard objects.
- Keep the key away from magnetic fields.
- After locking the vehicle and arming its anti-theft alarm system, keep the key away from the vehicle if you do not use the vehicle; otherwise the automatic card finding of the vehicle will consume the low-voltage battery.

1. Unlock with the mechanical key.
2. Depress the brake pedal and meanwhile press the START/ STOP button, and the smart key warning light on the instrument cluster goes on, with a beep from the instrument cluster buzzer.
3. Within 30s after the instrument speaker sounds, put the smart key close to the indicator of no electricity on the secondary dashboard, and the instrument speaker will sound again. At this time, the warning lamp of the smart key system is off, and the engine can be started.
4. Start the vehicle within five seconds after the speaker beeps again.



## If there is a High-Voltage Fault

If the vehicle breaks down and the combination instrument displays "low-voltage power supply system failure, please stop safely and contact the service shop", please stop safely immediately and contact the authorized service shop of BYD Automobile to deal with it.

## If the Vehicle Cannot Power on

Before the inspection, make sure that the vehicle is started according to the correct starting procedure (see ***P123***), and check whether the fuel is sufficient. At the same time, check whether the vehicle can be started with the spare key. If it can be started, the original key may have been damaged. In this case, have the

key checked by a BYD authorized service provider. If all keys cannot be used, the key or smart key system may fail. In this case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

**If the motor drives the engine to rotate at normal speed but the engine cannot run:**

1. Restart the vehicle.
2. If the engine cannot be started, the cause may be engine oil spillage due to repeated starts.
3. If the engine still cannot be started, adjustment or repair is required. Contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider immediately.

## If the engine fails to start while driving

- Slowly reduce the speed and keep driving in a straight line. Carefully drive the vehicle off the road to a safe place.
- Turn on the hazard warning lights.
- Try to restart the engine.
- The engine starts and stops frequently due to the lack of fuel.
  - If there is little fuel in the fuel tank, it is normal to repeat the startup and shutdown cycle; if it is identified that there is little fuel in the fuel tank, the engine starts and shut down repeatedly, thus failing to start. If the fuel in the tank is used up before refueling, the engine frequently starts and stops for some time. However, after the fuel pipe is filled with fuel, the engine enters the normal operation state.

## If the Engine is Overheated

If the engine coolant temperature gauge indicates a high level, power loss is found and abnormal sounds like knocking or bang appears, it indicates that the engine is overheated, and the following procedures should be followed:

1. Drive the vehicle away from heavy traffic and park it in a safe place. Turn on the hazard warning light switch, pull the EPB switch, and shift to P gear. If the A/C is used, turn off the A/C and place a warning triangle at the corresponding position behind the vehicle according to the regulations.
2. If coolant is spraying from the radiator or auxiliary tank, stop the engine and open the hood after the steam disappears If no coolant is sprayed, keep the engine running and confirm that the cooling fan is working. If the fan is not working, stop the engine.

**REMINDER**

- To avoid personal injury, keep the hood closed until no coolant flows out. The flow of coolant indicates high pressure.

3. Check the radiator, hose and vehicle underneath for obvious coolant leakage.

**WARNING**

- When the engine is running, keep hands and clothes at a certain distance from the rotating fan and engine pulley.

4. In case of coolant leakage, stop the engine immediately and contact a BYD authorized service provider for help.

5. If there is no obvious leakage, check the expansion tank. If coolant is insufficient, when the engine is running, add coolant into the expansion tank to the middle of the lower and upper scale mark.
6. After the engine coolant temperature drops to the normal value, check the level in the expansion tank again. If necessary, add more coolant to the appropriate scale. A serious loss of coolant indicates a leakage in the system. In this case, contact a BYD authorized service provider for inspection immediately.

**WARNING**

- To avoid serious injury caused by high-temperature steam and liquid ejection, do not open the radiator cover when the engine and radiator are hot.

7. After parking, if the high-voltage battery SOC is low, do not use the A/C for a long time, because it consumes battery SOC. Low battery SOC triggers the engine to generate electricity, which may cause an accident or fire due to engine overheating.

## If the Vehicle Needs Towing

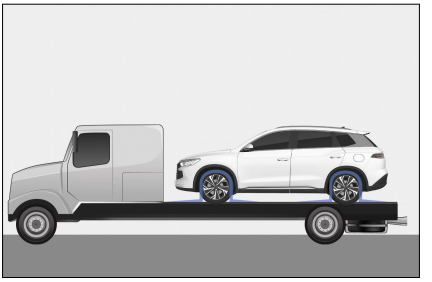
If the vehicle needs to be towed, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider or a professional towing service provider, or ask for assist from the organization that provides roadside assist.

**CAUTION**

- The vehicle must not be towed by other vehicles using only ropes or chains.

Recommended method of towing the vehicle:

- Flatbed device
  - If the vehicle fails and needs rescue, a flatbed is recommended. When transporting the vehicle, be sure to keep the four wheels of the vehicle off the ground, so as to avoid damage to some high-voltage components caused by single front wheel or single rear wheel landing.



**CAUTION**

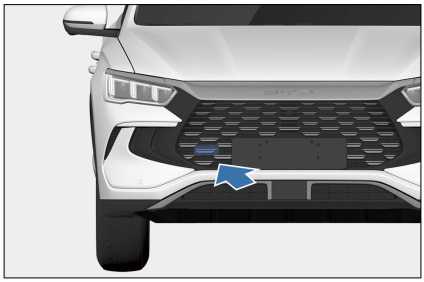
- When moving a vehicle on a flat trailer, make sure that the vehicle being moved is properly secured to prevent it from sliding back.
- It is recommended to use professional tire binding belt and tensioner, and it is recommended to fix the vehicle to be moved in a straight binding way.
- When fixing the vehicle, do not put the fixing devices such as lashing belts and ropes through the wheels or tie them on the chassis, suspension and other parts of the body to avoid damaging the vehicle.
- When transporting the vehicle, make sure that the wheels of the vehicle to be moved are unable to rotate, so as not to damage the vehicle.

**Towing Hook**

- The front towing hook plug of the vehicle is located on the right side of the front grille, and the installation position is as shown in the figure:

  1. Slightly pry up with a straight lever or a rocker to open the plug cover of the traction hook;

  2. Install the towing hook in the towing hole.



- The rear towing hook of the vehicle is located at the lower left side of the rear of the vehicle, and the installation position is as shown in the figure:

  1. Press the edge of the towing hook plug on the rear bumper as shown in the figure to open the rear cover;

  2. Install the towing hook that comes with the vehicle.



- If the vehicle is stuck or supported, it is forbidden to use the traction hook to rescue the vehicle. It is recommended to contact a professional rescue agency or call the customer service hotline for help.

- In case of emergency, please observe the following precautions to avoid vehicle damage or personal injury when the vehicle is rescued or other trapped vehicles need to be rescued by using the towing hook:

  - The driver of the towed vehicle must sit in the vehicle to control the vehicle, and the steering system and braking system of the vehicle must be in normal condition;

  - The towing vehicle is in good condition, the towed vehicle is in "N" gear, and the towing speed shall not exceed 5km/h;

  - Catapult towing is prohibited;

  - The vehicle being towed shall not carry persons except the driver, and shall not tow the trailer;

  - Both the tractor and the tractor to be pulled should turn on the emergency warning light;

  - Use only the towing hook provided with the vehicle and use it correctly to avoid damaging the vehicle;

  - The distance between the tractor and the tractor should be greater than 4m and less than 10m;

  - The width and weight of the tractor to be pulled shall not be greater than the width and weight of the vehicle;

  - When towing the vehicle, it should be ensured that the surrounding area is spacious and unobstructed, and no person is near the towing device;

  - When the vehicle is untrapped, the direction of the vehicle is controlled to be consistent with the direction of the towing force, and it is forbidden to drag from the side or vertical angle.

**WARNING**

- If the steering system or braking system of the tractor fails, please contact the professional rescue or call the customer service hotline for help. Do not directly tow the rescue.

## If a Tire Goes Flat

- Slowly reduce your speed, keep straight and drive off the road to a safe place away from heavy traffic. Park on a solid, flat surface and avoid parking on the central fork of the highway.
- Pull EPB switch and press the P button.



- Power off the vehicle and turn on the hazard warning light.
- Be sure to have all passengers get off the vehicle and ask them to go to a safe place away from crowded traffic.
- To prevent slipping, secure the vehicle by wedging the tire diagonally against the flat tire.

**CAUTION**

- Do not continue driving with a flat tire. Driving even a short distance can cause too severe damage for the tire to be repaired.

### In-Vehicle Tools

The in-vehicle tools supplied with the vehicle are stored in the tool bag under the cargo cover. In-Vehicle tools includes: Warning triangle, reflective vest, wheel nut cover removal clip, tire repair device, traction hook, etc.

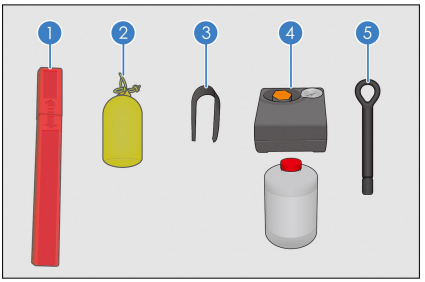
① Warning triangle

② Reflective vest

③ Wheel nut cover removal clip

④ Tire repair kit

⑤ Towing Hook




**REMINDER**

- In an emergency where you need to service the vehicle yourself, you must know how to use these in-vehicle tools and their locations.

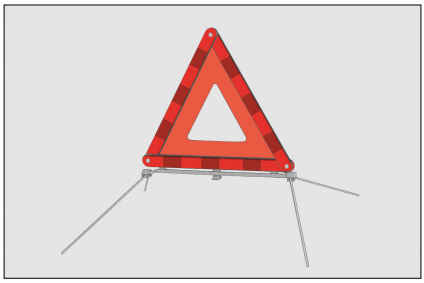
### Placing the warning triangle

The warning triangle is used to warn drivers of vehicles coming from behind and to avoid risk of collision with the vehicle ahead being parked or repaired due to high speed or late braking.

How to use the warning triangle:

1. Take the warning triangle out of its box.
2. Open the warning triangle to form a closed triangle.

3. Release its supports to create a pattern as shown.



**REMINDER**

- When parking for repair, remember to place the warning triangle side facing oncoming vehicles for warning and avoiding danger, 100-200 meters away from the parking vehicle. After the repair, recover the warning triangle for future use.

### Using the Tire Repair Kit

- The tire repair device can be used to seal small cuts, especially in the tread pattern. The tire repair device is only for emergency purposes so that you can drive the vehicle to the nearest maintenance center.

**WARNING**

- The tire repair kit is only suitable for minor damages of tires. If a wheel is damaged, tyre puncture sealant kit is prohibited.
- Tire sealant is highly flammable and harmful to health. Take the necessary precautions to prevent fire and avoid contact with skin, eyes and clothing; keep away from children; and do not inhale its vapor.

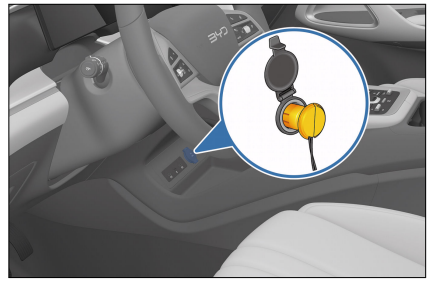
**WARNING**

**In case of contact with tire sealant:**

- If tire sealant comes into contact with the skin or gets into the eyes, thoroughly flush the affected body part immediately with plenty of clean water.
- Change contaminated clothing immediately.
- In case of an allergic reaction, seek medical attention immediately.
- If tire sealant is ingested by accident, rinse mouth thoroughly and drink plenty of water immediately. Do not induce vomiting, but seek medical attention immediately.

### Usage of the Tire Repair Device

- Please refer to the label on the inflator for the detailed usage of the tire repair device.
- If the inflator needs to be connected to the power supply, please connect the power plug to the 12V outlet in the vehicle, start the vehicle, and turn on the inflator switch.The tire repair device is filled into the tire together with air through the hose of the inflator.



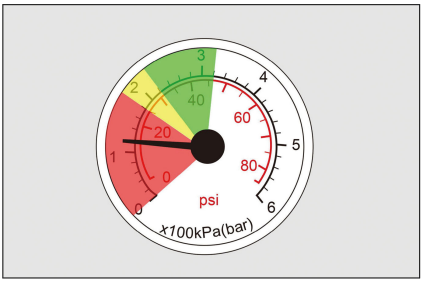
**WARNING**

- When starting the vehicle, the vehicle should be located outdoors or in a well-ventilated place (such as a building). Running the engine in a nonventilated or poorly ventilated place may cause suffocation.

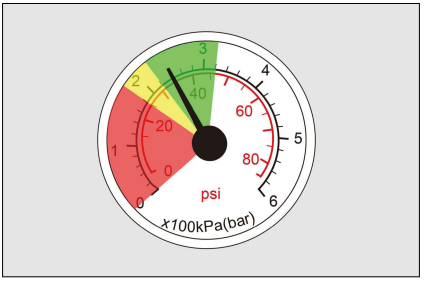
**REMINDER**

- When plugging the power plug into the backup power supply in the vehicle, make sure that the inflator pump is turned off.
- The inflator can only be turned on for up to 10 minutes.
- The working current of the backup power supply is less than 10A.
- During use, the voltage and power should not exceed the rated voltage of 12V and rated power of 120W marked on the backup power supply, otherwise, there are potential safety hazards.

- Observe the tire pressure gauge reading on the inflator.
  - If the tire pressure does not reach 200 kPa (2.0 bar) within 10 minutes (red area shown in the figure), turn off the inflator. You are recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.




- If the tire pressure reaches 200~320kPa (2.0~3.2bar) (green and yellow areas shown in the illustration), remove the kit as soon as possible and drive at a speed below 80 km/h within one minute, with the furthest driving distance not exceeding 10 km, so that the tire sealant is evenly distributed within the tire.




- Stop and check the repaired tire, and observe the tire pressure gauge on the instrument cluster.
  - If the tire pressure is greater than 250 kPa (2.5 bar), drive to the nearest service center at a speed below 80 km/h.
  - If the tire pressure is between 200 to 250 kPa (2.0 to 2.5 bar), inject the tire sealant into the tire and observe the tire pressure readings on the inflator.
  - If the tire pressure does not reach 200 kPa (2.0 bar), contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

**REMINDER**

- Using tire repair device on damaged tires is only an emergency solution. Please change the tires at a professional repair center as soon as possible. It is recommended that you contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider and inform the

**REMINDER**

maintenance technician that the tires contain tire sealant.

- After using the tire repair device, it is recommended that you purchase new tire sealant and inflation hose at a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- Avoid hard acceleration and high-speed turns.
- Do not exceed 80km/h and replace the flat tire as soon as possible (within 200km). Do not continue driving in case of strong vibration, unstable driving performance or noise during driving.
- When the tire sealant is about to expire (see the label on the can for the exact date), replace it with a new one.

# 08 VEHICLE SPECIFICATIONS

Data Information..... 256
Prompt Information..... 259
Declarations of Conformity..... 263

# Data Information

## Vehicle Data

**Vehicle Dimensions**

| Item | Data |
|---|---|
| Length (mm) | 4738 |
| Width (mm, excluding side mirrors) | 1860 |
| Height (mm) | 1710 |
| Wheelbase (mm) | 2712 |
| Front track (mm) | 1565 |
| Rear track (mm) | 1565 |
| Front suspension (mm) | 1018 |
| Rear suspension (mm) | 1008 |
| Approach angle (°) | 18 |
| Departure angle (°) | 22 |

**Vehicle Mass**

| Item | Data | Data | Data |
|---|---|---|---|
| Product model | Configuration 1 | Configuration 2 | Configuration 3 |
| Curb weight (kg) | 1724 | 1749 | 1785 |
| Curb weight - front axle load (kg) | 1010 | 1011 | 1036 |
| Curb weight - rear axle load (kg) | 714 | 738 | 749 |
| Max. allowable total mass (kg) | 2134 | 2159 | 2195 |
| Front axle load at max. allowable total mass (kg) | 1124 | 1128 | 1151 |
| Rear axle load at max. allowable total mass (kg) | 1010 | 1031 | 1044 |

| Item | Data | Data | Data |
|---|---|---|---|
| Number of occupants (persons) | 5 | 5 | 5 |

**Drive Motor**

| Item | Data |
|---|---|
| Drive Motor Model | TZ220XYE |
| Drive Motor Type | Permanent magnet synchronous motor |
| Drive Type | Front-wheel drive |

**Engine Data**

| Item | Data |
|---|---|
| Engine Model | BYD472QA |
| Engine Type | In-line four-cylinder, spark ignition, four-stroke, multi-injection, naturally aspireated, cooling. |
| Displacement (mL) | 1498 |
| Maximum net engine power(kW/rpm) | 72/6000 |
| Max. torque (N · m/rpm) | 122/4500 |
| Drive Type | Front-wheel drive |
| Emission standard | Euro 6E regulation |

**Vehicle power performance and economic efficiency**

| Item | Data |
|---|---|
| Maximum design speed | 170 |
| Max. gradeability (%) | ⩾30 |

**REMINDER**

- The actual consumption is related to vehicle conditions, road conditions, driving habits, and other factors.

**High-Voltage Battery**

| Item | Data | Data |
|---|---|---|
| Product model | Configuration 1 | Configuration 2 |
| High-voltage battery type | Lithium iron phosphate battery | Lithium iron phosphate battery |
| High-voltage battery rated capacity (Ah) | 37.5 | 54 |

**Wheels and Tires**

| Item | Data |
|---|---|
| Number of tires | 4 |
| Tire specification | 225/60R18 |
| Tire pressure (kPa) | 250 |
| Wheel dynamic balance requirement (g) | <10 |

**Wheel alignment parameters (under curb weight)**

| Item | Data |
|---|---|
| Front wheel camber (°) | -0.18±0.75 |
| Total front wheel toe-in (°) | 0.08±0.16 |
| Kingpin inclination angle (°) | 11.36±0.75 |
| Kingpin caster angle (°) | 6.91±0.75 |
| Rear wheel camber (°) | -0.75±0.75 |
| Total rear wheel toe-in (°) | 0.24±0.16 |

**Seats**

| Item | Data |
|---|---|
| Forward and backward moving spaces for front seat (cushion depth measured) | 20mm forward of the rearmost position of the rail |
| Seatback angle of front seats (cushion depth measured) | 25° |
| Normal service conditions of front seatbacks | Design position of the backrest: 24.3° forward and 50.7 backward; rail: 220mm forward, 20mm backward and 4.5° |

| Item | Data |
|---|---|
| Forward and backward positions of rear seats (cushion depth measured) | Non-adjustable |
| Backrest angles of rear seats (cushion depth measured) | 28° |
| Normal service conditions of rear seatbacks | Design position: 15° forward and 5.625° backward, without rail |

**Recommended fluids and fill levels**

| Item | Data |
|---|---|
| BYD472QA engine oil model | SP 0W-20; C5 0W-20 and meet the SN+/SP specification |
| BYD472QA engine oil filling quantity (L) | 3.3 |
| EHS special oil model | EHSF-2LV |
| Filling Quantity of EHS special oil (L) | 2.5L for replacement (not replace filter assembly); 3.0L for replacement (replace filter assembly at the same time); 3.6L for overhaul. |
| Brake fluid type | HZY6/DOT4 |
| Brake fluid amount (L) | 1.1± 0.05 |
| Engine coolant type | Ethylene glycol type long-acting anti-rust antifreeze -40°C |
| Engine coolant amount (L) | 7.0±0.2 |
| Motor controller coolant type | Ethylene glycol type long-acting anti-rust antifreeze -40°C |
| Motor coolant amount (L) | 4.35±0.2 |

**CAUTION**

- The recommended oil type has been tested and approved by BYD, and the use of other oil types may affect the performance of the vehicle, or even cause vehicle failure or component damage.

# Prompt Information

## Vehicle Identification

**Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)**

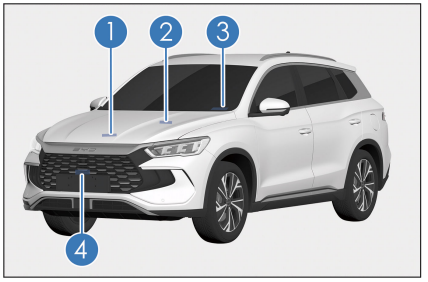
**Paste position of VIN code:**

① Front hood inner panel lock ring side

② The front side of the rear motor transmission housing

③ Inside lower left corner of windshield

④ Attached to the front anti-collision beam

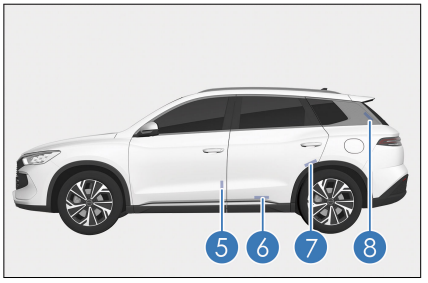



⑤ Lower right corner of left front door inner panel

⑥ Sheet metal surface inside the left rear door sill

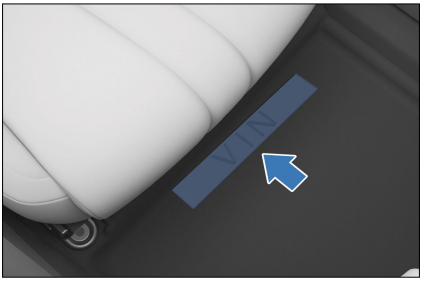
⑦ Sheet metal surface inside the left rear door sill

⑧ Sheet metal surface of left side frame of inner panel of tailgate



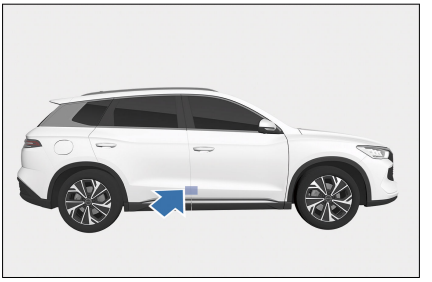

**Position of engraved VIN:**

VIN is engraved under the front passenger's seat. After connecting the VDS, Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) can be found in the upper right corner of the screen for the corresponding model. For details, please refer to the VDS operation manual.



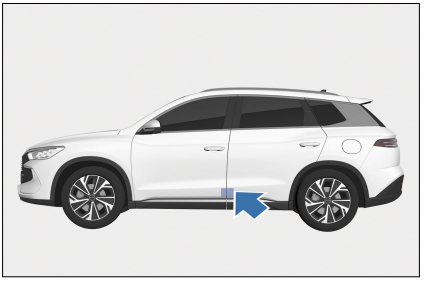
**Vehicle Nameplate**

The complete vehicle nameplate is located under the right B-pillar.



**Information Pertaining to Agents in the EU**

The label for information pertaining to agents in the EU is attached to the side sheet metal surface at the lower end of the left B-pillar.



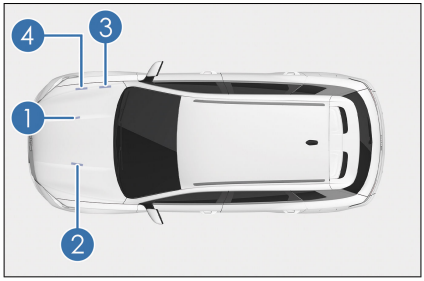
**Model and Number of Engine and Drive Motor**

① The model and number of the engine are engraved on the engine block.

② The model and serial number of front drive motor are engraved on the front drive motor housing.

③ The engine model and number are pasted on the right side of the inner panel of the hood.

④ The model and number of the drive motor are attached to the right part of the inner panel of the hood.




## Warning Labels

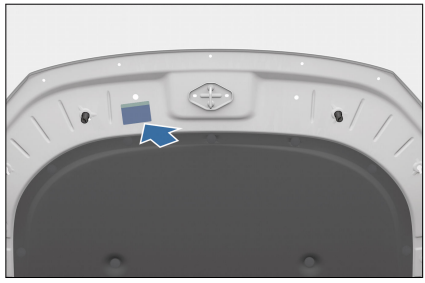
The tire pressure label is attached under the driver's B-pillar locking ring.



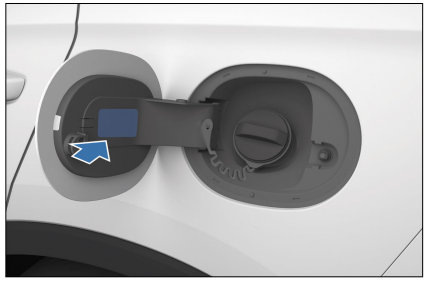
The airbag warning label is printed on the left sun visor.



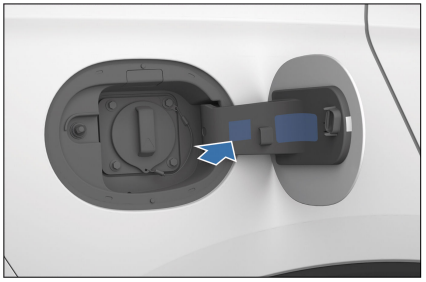
The air conditioner filling and cooling fan reminder labels are pasted above the hood.



The oil level indicator label is pasted in the middle of the inner surface of the oil filler cap.



The prompt of pulling out the charging gun and the European standard charging port label are pasted on the inner surface of the AC charging port cover.



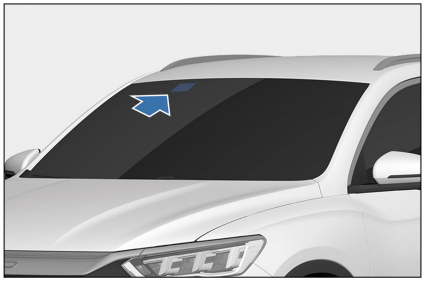
**Warnings on Strut Mechanisms**

The gas spring stay bar mechanism of this vehicle contains high-pressure gas, which is dangerous to a certain extent. Do not disassemble it by yourself. The warning symbols on the product have the following meanings:

| Symbol | Symbol name |
|---|---|
|  | Warning |
|  | Pressurized cylinder |
|  | Refer to the Owner's Manual |
|  | No Open Flames |
|  | Not user-serviceable |
|  | Do not discard.<br>Note: Contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for recycling. |
|  | Do not hand cranking. |
|  | Do not step on it. |

## Transponder Mounting Position

The transponder mounting position is located in the upper right of the front windshield.



**CAUTION**

- Do not overlap with the glass frame or other objects when attaching the electronic logo.

# Declarations of Conformity

## Declarations of Conformity

**Radio Frequency Regulatory Identification**

CE

Your vehicle has different types of radio equipment. The manufacturers of the radio equipment declare that the RF Modules are in compliance with Directive 2014/53/EU. The full text of the EU declaration of conformity is available at the following Internet address: https://cn-prod.byd.com/eu/eu-doc.

| Component Name | Frequency | Maximum Power |
|---|---|---|
| Tire pressure monitoring transmitter module | 314.9MHz±25KHz | 86dBμV/m±3dB |
| | 315MHz±45KHz | 3m field -58~-52dBm |
| | 433.92MHz±44KHz | 87dBμV/m±2dB |
| | 433.92MHz±40KHz | 3m field -58~-52dBm |
| Interior detection antenna | 125±3KHZ | 10w |
| Electronic Smart Key | 433.92MHZ±60KHZ | 10dbm |
| High-frequency module | 433.92MHZ±60KHZ | 0.48W |
| Sensory mobile phone wireless charging module 1 | 127.7K±30K | 15W (single side charging) |
| | | 15W*2 (bilateral charging) |
| Sensory mobile phone wireless charging module 1 | 127.7K±30K | 50W |
| ECALL GPS antenna | 1559MHz~1605MHz | 0.05W |

| Component Name | Frequency | Maximum Power |
|---|---|---|
| ECALL 4G antenna | 701 MHz~960 MHz<br>1.71GHz~2.69GHz | |
| Exterior NFC device | 13.56MHz | 2W |
| On-board Bluetooth device | 2.402GHz~2.480GHz | 8dBm |
| Wi-Fi hotspot device | 2.402GHz~2.482GHz<br>5.17 GHz~5.835 GHz | 16dBm |
| Network communication antenna (4G) | 701 MHz~960 MHz<br>1.71GHz~2.69GHz | / |
| Network communication device (4G) | 700MHz~2600MHz | 23dBm |
| FM broadcasting antenna amplifier | 76MHz~108MHz | 0.24W |
| FM radio broadcasting host | | 0.8W |
| DAB antenna amplifier | 170MHz~240MHz | 0.24W |
| DAB box | | 1.5W |
| Three-in-one antenna (4G, WiFi/BT) | 1559MHz~1605MHz<br>(GPS antenna)<br>701 MHz~960 MHz<br>1.71GHz~2.69GHz<br>(4G antenna)<br>2.4 GHz~2.5 GHz<br>(WiFi/BT antenna) | 0.03W |
| MmWave radars | 76GHz~77GHz | / |
| AM antenna amplifier | 522KHz~1800KHz | 0.6W |
| AM host | | 0.8W |

**Engine emark identification**

| | |
|---|---|
|  | BYD472QA: E9 85R-006689 |

**Smart key regulation identification**

| | |
|---|---|
|  | EU countries<br>Model: D0-92/D1-92<br>This equipment is not entitled to protection against harmful interference and may not cause interference to duly authorized systems. |
|  | Uzbekistan<br>Model: D0-92/D1-92 |
|  | Australia/New Zealand<br>Model: D0-92/D1-92 |
|  | Brazil<br>Model: D0-92/D1-92<br>This equipment is not entitled to protection against harmful interference and may not cause interference to duly authorized systems. |
|  | Japan<br>Model: D0-315/D1-315 |

**Corner millimeter wave radar regulation identification**

| | |
|---|---|
|  | EU countries<br>Certificate ID: NB2906.2024.000261 |
|  | EU R10<br>Certificate ID: E57*10R06/02*0756 |

## Numerics

12V Standby Power..... 213

## A

A/C Control Panel..... 203
A/C Operation Interface..... 204
A/C System..... 234
Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System (AVAS)..... 180
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)..... 141
Adjusting the Interior Rearview Mirror Manually..... 76
Adjusting the Steering Wheel..... 73
AEB..... 157
Airbag Overview..... 15
Anti-lock Braking System..... 195
Anti-theft System..... 33
Around View Monitor (AVM)*..... 180
Automatic Vehicle Hold (AVH)..... 131
Automatic Vehicle Washing..... 225

## B

Bill Box..... 210
Blind Spot Detection (BSD)..... 169
Brake Fluid..... 233
Break-in Period..... 107

## C

Carrying Luggage..... 119
Center Console Cubby..... 210
Charging Method..... 92
Charging Precautions..... 89
Charging Safety Warnings..... 88
Child Presence Detection (CPD)... 190
Child Protection Lock..... 66
Child Restraint Systems..... 23
Control Function of Charging Port Anti-theft Lock..... 101
Cooling System..... 232
Cup Holder..... 211

## D

Data Collection and Processing..... 34
Discharging Instructions..... 98
Door Bins..... 210
Door Opening Warning (DOW)..... 171
Driver and Front Passenger Airbags ..... 17
Driver Monitoring System (DMS)* 188
Driving Safety Systems..... 191
Driving the Vehicle..... 125

## E

Electric Parking Brake (EPB)..... 128
Electric window switch..... 80
Electrical Front Seat Adjustment... 68
Emergency Lane Keeping Assist (ELKA)..... 166
Engine Oil..... 231
Exterior Cleaning..... 223

## F

Fire Prevention..... 122
Folding Rear Seats..... 69
Forward Collision Warning (FCW) 153
Front Far Side Airbag..... 18
Front Seat Side Airbags..... 18
Front-Row USB Ports..... 212
Fuel..... 116
Functional Definition..... 205
Fuses..... 238

## G

Gear Shift Controls..... 127
Glasses Case..... 211
Glove Box..... 210

## H

Hazard Warning Light Switch..... 84

High-Voltage Battery..... 104
Hood..... 230
Household Portable AC Charging.. 93

## I

If Smart Key Battery is Exhausted 246
If the engine fails to start while driving..... 247
If the Engine is Overheated..... 247
If the Vehicle Cannot Power On.... 246
If the Vehicle Needs Towing..... 248
Installing Child Restraint Systems. 23
Intelligent Cruise Control (ICC).... 150
Intelligent High Beam Control (IHBC) ..... 178
Intelligent Speed Limit Control (ISLC) ..... 153
Interior Cleaning..... 225
Interior Light Switch..... 84

## K

Keys..... 54

## L

Lane Departure Assist (LDA)..... 163
Light Switches..... 78
Locking/Unlocking Doors..... 58
Locking/Unlocking the Tailgate..... 61
Low-Voltage Battery..... 105

## M

Maintenance Cycle and Items..... 218
Maintenance instructions for wiper blade..... 234
Manual Anti-glare Interior Rearview Mirror..... 77
Manual Vehicle Washing..... 224
Multimedia Touchscreen..... 200

## O

OTA Update..... 201
Other Instrument Cluster Fault Prompts..... 49

## P

Paint Maintenance Tips..... 223
Parking Assist System (PAS)..... 183
Passenger Airbag Switch..... 83
Pretensioner and Force Limiter Function*..... 12

## R

Rack..... 213
Rear Collision Warning (RCW)..... 172
Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA)..... 175
Rear Cross Traffic Brake (RCTB).... 176
Rear Seat Head Supports..... 69
Reflective Vest..... 246
Regular Maintenance..... 221
Reversing image system*..... 182
Risk of Carbon Monoxide (CO) Poisoning..... 120

## S

Safety Driving Precautions..... 115
Saving Fuel and Extending Vehicle Service Life..... 118
Seat Belt Overview..... 12
Seat Precautions..... 67
Seatback Pockets..... 211
Self-Maintenance Precautions..... 227
Side Curtain Airbags..... 19
Smart Access and Start System..... 65
SOC Balance Function..... 102
Start the Vehicle..... 123
Steering Wheel Switch Group..... 70
Suggestions on Vehicle Use and Storage..... 116
Sun Visor..... 212

## T

Tire..... 235
Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)..... 187
Traffic Sign Recognition (TSR)..... 160
Trailer Towing*..... 107
Transponder Mounting Position.. 262

## U

Using AC Charging Piles..... 95
Using Seat Belts..... 12

## V

Vehicle Corrosion Prevention..... 222
Vehicle Identification Number..... 259
Vehicle Servicing..... 221
Vehicle Storage..... 229
Vehicle-to-Load (V2L)..... 99

## W

Wading into Water..... 121
Warning Labels..... 261
Washer..... 233
Wiper Switch..... 73
Wireless Phone Charger*..... 214
Working Mode Selection of Dual-Mode (DM) System..... 30

# Abbreviation List

## Abbreviations

| Terminology | Full Name | Terminology | Full Name |
|---|---|---|---|
| ELR | Emergency Locking Retractor | ECU | Electronic Control Unit |
| ECO | Ecology, Conservation, Optimization | NORMAL | Normal |
| SPORT | Sport | EDR | Event Data Recorder |
| SOC | State of Charge | VTOL | Vehicle to Load |
| EPB | Electronic Parking Brake | AVH | Auto Vehicle Hold |
| ACC | Adaptive Cruise Control | FCW | Forward Collision Warning |
| TSR | Traffic Sign Recognition | LDA | Lane Departure Assist |
| LDW | Lane Departure Warning | LDP | Lane Departure Prevention |
| BSD | Blind Spot Detection | DOW | Door Open Warning |
| RCW | Rear Collision Warning | RCTA | Rear Collision Traffic Alert |
| RCTB | Rear Cross Traffic Braking | IHBC | Intelligent High Beam Control |
| AVAS | Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System | DMS | Driver Monitoring System |
| VDC | Vehicle Dynamics Control | TCS | Traction Control System |
| HHC | Hill Descent Control | HBA | Hydraulic Brake Assist |
| CDP | Controlled Deceleration for Parking Brake | HDC | Hill Descent Control |
| CST | Comfort Parking | EBD | Electronic Brakeforce Distribution |
| VIN | Vehicle Identification Number | | |

BUILD YOUR DREAMS

Edition date: 11.2025 EN_V0